FORD **FOCUS** Owner's Manual

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2023

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3929en-202309-20231024095529

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Publication 19
Using This Publication 19
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication 19
Special Notices 20

Data Privacy
Data Privacy 22
Service Data 23
Event Data 23
Settings Data 24
Connected Vehicle Data 24
Mobile Device Data 24
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: Emergency Assistance 25
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall 25

Environment
Protecting the Environment 26

Visual Search
Steering Wheel - Excluding: ST 27
Steering Wheel - ST 27
Instrument Panel - LHD 28
Instrument Panel - RHD 29

Child Safety
Child Safety Precautions 30
Child Restraint Anchor Points 31
Child Restraints 33
Booster Seats 36
Child Safety Locks 37

Seatbelts
Seatbelt Precautions 38
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts 38
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy 38
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height 39
Seatbelt Reminder 39
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting 41

Airbags
How Do the Front Airbags Work 42
How Do the Side Airbags Work 42
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work 43
Airbag Precautions 43
Airbag Locations 44
Passenger Airbag Indicators 44
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off 45
Airbags – Troubleshooting 45

Emergency Assistance
What Is Emergency Assistance 46
How Does Emergency Assistance Work 46
Emergency Call Requirements 46
Emergency Call Limitations 47

eCall
What Is eCall 49
How Does eCall Work 49
Emergency Call Requirements 49
Emergency Call Limitations 49
Manually Making an Emergency Call 49
Emergency Call Indicators 50
Changing the Backup Battery 51
eCall – Troubleshooting 51

Keys and Remote Controls
Remote Control Limitations 52
Removing the Key Blade 52
Locating Your Vehicle 52

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Changing the Remote Control Battery 52
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control 54
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting 54

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle 55
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle 57
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function 57
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor 57
Autounlock 58
Mislock 58
Autorelock 58
Door Lock Indicators 59
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings 59
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting 59

Keyless Entry

Keyless Entry Limitations 60
Keyless Entry Settings 60
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Using Keyless Entry 60
Locking and Unlocking the Liftgate Using Keyless Entry 61
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting 61

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions 63
Opening the Liftgate 63
Closing the Liftgate 63
Liftgate – Troubleshooting 64

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions 65
Opening the Liftgate 65
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off 67
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height 67
Closing the Liftgate 67
Stopping the Liftgate Movement 69
Liftgate Obstacle Detection 69
Liftgate – Troubleshooting 69

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System 72
Anti-Theft Alarm System 72
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings 73
Security – Troubleshooting 74

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel 76
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition 76
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start 77
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off 77

Wipers and Washers

Wipers 78
Autowipers 79
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off 80
Reverse Wipe 80
Checking the Wiper Blades 80
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades 80
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades 81
Washers 81
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting 82

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control 83
Headlamps 83

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Headlamps – Troubleshooting 85
Autolamps 85
Exterior Lamps 86
Automatic High Beam Control 88
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting 90
Glare Free High Beam Control 90
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting 93
Adaptive Front Lighting 93
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting 95

Interior Lighting - Vehicles Without: Map Reading Lamps

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off 96
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off 96
Interior Lamp Function 96
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness 96
Ambient Lighting 97

Interior Lighting - Vehicles With: Map Reading Lamps

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off 98
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off 98
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off 98
Interior Lamp Function 98
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness 99
Ambient Lighting 99

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows 100
Global Opening and Closing 100
Window Bounce-Back 101
Locking the Rear Window Controls 102

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions 103
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror 103
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror 103

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors 104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors 104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors 104

Moonroof

Opening and Closing the Sunshade 105
Opening and Closing the Moonroof 105
Venting the Moonroof 106
Moonroof Bounce-Back 106

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 107
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 108
Tachometer 108
Speedometer 108
Fuel Gauge 108
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 109
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps 109
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps 109
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators 111
Instrument Cluster Indicators 111

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Table of Contents

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls 114
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu 114
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) 115
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) 115
Personalized Settings 115
Fuel Economy Display 116
Trip Summary 116

Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls 117
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu 117
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) 118
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) 118
Fuel Economy Display 119
Trip Summary 119

Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

Accessing the Trip Computer 120
Resetting the Trip Computer 120
Resetting the Individual Trip Values 120
Configuring the Trip Computer 120
Trip Data 120

Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

Accessing the Trip Computer 121
Resetting the Trip Computer 121
Trip Data 121

Head Up Display

What Is the Head Up Display 122
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off 122
Head Up Display Settings 122
Head Up Display Indicators 123
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting 123

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

What Is Remote Start 124
Remote Start Limitations 124
Enabling Remote Start 124
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle 124
Remote Start Settings 124

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

Switching Climate Control On and Off 126
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off 126
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off 126
Switching Defrost On and Off 126
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Windshield 126
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield 127

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off 127
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield 127
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off 127
Setting the Blower Motor Speed 127
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off 128
Setting the Temperature 128
Directing the Flow of Air 128
Auto Mode 128
Climate Control Hints 130

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off 132
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off 132
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off 132
Switching Defrost On and Off 132
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Windshield 132
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield 133
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off 133
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield 133
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off 133
Setting the Blower Motor Speed 133
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off 134
Setting the Temperature 134
Directing the Flow of Air 134
Climate Control Hints 134

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions 136
Sitting in the Correct Position 136
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 2-Way Manual Seat 137
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat 138
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 6-Way Manual Seat 140
Power Seats - Vehicles With: Driver 6-Way Power Seat 142
Heated Seats 144

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Precautions 146
Manual Seats 146

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System 149
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work 149
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions 149
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations 149
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings 150
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators 150
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings 151

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports 152
Playing Media Using the USB Port 152
Charging a Device 152

Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet 154
Power Outlet Precautions 154

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Locating the Power Outlets 154

Cigar Lighter

Cigar Lighter Precautions 155
Using the Cigar Lighter 155

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger 156
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions 156
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger 156
Charging a Wireless Device 157
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting 157

Storage

Cup Holders 158
Under Floor Storage 158

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions 159
Push Button Ignition Switch 159
Starting the Engine 160
Stopping the Engine 161
Automatic Engine Stop 163
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position 163
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting 163

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle 167
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work 167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics 167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators 167

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop 168
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions 168
Auto-Start-Stop Settings 168
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off 168
Stopping the Engine 168
Restarting the Engine 169
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators 169
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning 169
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting 169

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV), Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop 171
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions 171
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off 171
Stopping the Engine 171
Restarting the Engine 171
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators 171
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning 172
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting 172

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

What Is Auto-Start-Stop 174
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions 174
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off 174
Stopping the Engine 174
Restarting the Engine 174

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators 175
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning 175
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting 175

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission, Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV)

What Is Auto-Start-Stop 177
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions 177
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off 177
Stopping the Engine 177
Restarting the Engine 177
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators 178
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting 178

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions 180
Fuel Quality 181
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel 182
Running Out of Fuel 182
Refueling 183
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™ 185
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBlue 186
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.3L EcoBoost™ 187
Fuel Consumption Regulations 188
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™ 188
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBlue 189
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.3L EcoBoost™ 190
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings 191
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting 191

Diesel Particulate Filter

What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter 192
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work 192
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions 192
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements 193
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting 193

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System 195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions 195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements 195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines 195
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank 196
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 198
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 198
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption 198
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification 198
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting 199

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter 202
Catalytic Converter Precautions 202
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting 202

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Gasoline Particulate Filter

What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter 203
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work 203
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions 203
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements 203
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting 203

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions 205
Shifting Into Reverse 205
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators 205
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level 205
Clutch Fluid Specification 205
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting 206

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions 207
Automatic Transmission Positions 207
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission 208
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters 208
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters 208
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters 209
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission 209
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/7-Speed Automatic Transmission 210
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission 210
Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters 210
Stay in Neutral Mode - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission 211
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission 212
Brake Shift Interlock - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/7-Speed Automatic Transmission 212
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting 214

Electronic Limited-Slip Differential - ST

What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential 215
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential – Troubleshooting 216

Brakes

Brake Precautions 217
Anti-Lock Braking System 217
Brake Over Accelerator 217
Checking the Brake Fluid 217
Brakes – Troubleshooting 218

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake 221
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission 221
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission 221
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency 221
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake 222
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission 222

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission 222
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning 222
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge 222
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting 223

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist 225
How Does Hill Start Assist Work 225
Hill Start Assist Precautions 225
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission 225
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting 225

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work 226
Switching Auto Hold On and Off 226
Using Auto Hold - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/6-Speed Manual Transmission 226
Using Auto Hold - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission 227
Auto Hold Indicators 227

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control 228
How Does Traction Control Work 228
Switching Traction Control On and Off 228
Traction Control Indicator 228
Traction Control – Troubleshooting 228

Stability Control

What Is Stability Control 230
How Does Stability Control Work 230
Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST 230
Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST 231
Stability Control Indicator 231
Stability Control – Troubleshooting 231

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions 233
Switching Parking Aid On and Off 233
Rear Parking Aid 234
Front Parking Aid 234
Side Parking Aid 235
Parking Aid Indicators 237
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting 237

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera 239
Rear View Camera Precautions 239
Rear View Camera Limitations 239
Locating the Rear View Camera 239
Rear View Camera Guide Lines 239
Rear View Camera Settings 240

180 Degree Camera

What Is the 180 Degree Camera 242
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work 242
180 Degree Camera Precautions 242
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off 242

Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist 244
Active Park Assist Precautions 244
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 244
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 244
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 245

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 245
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 246
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 246
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist 247
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist 247
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting 248

Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control 250
Switching Cruise Control On and Off 250
Setting the Cruise Control Speed 250
Canceling the Set Speed 251
Resuming the Set Speed 251
Cruise Control Indicators 251

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control 252
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 252
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions 252
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations 253
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off 255
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control 255
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 255
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control 256
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 256
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control 257
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering 258
Canceling the Set Speed 259
Resuming the Set Speed 259
Overriding the Set Speed 260
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators 260
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control 260
Lane Centering 260
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting 263

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control 265
Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST 265
Selecting a Drive Mode - ST 265
Drive Modes 265
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting 266

Eco Coach

What Is Eco Coach 267
How Does Eco Coach Work 267
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work 267
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level 267
How Does Trip Summary Work 267
Viewing the Trip Summary 267

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Efficient Drive Mode

What Is Efficient Drive Mode 268
How Does Efficient Drive Mode Work 268
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off 268
Trip Summary 268
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators 269

Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information 270
Local Hazard Information Precautions 270
Local Hazard Information Indicators 270
Enabling Local Hazard Information 270
Checking Local Hazard Information Status 270

Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work 271
Speed Limiter Precautions 271
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering 271
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering 271
Setting the Speed Limit 271
Changing the Set Speed Limit 271
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering 271
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering 272
Resuming the Set Speed Limit 272
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit 272
Speed Limiter Indicators 272
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings 272

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter 273
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work 273
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions 273
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering 273
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering 274
Setting the Speed Limit 274
Changing the Set Speed Limit 274
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering 274
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering 274
Resuming the Set Speed Limit 274
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit 274
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators 275
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings 275
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter 275
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting 275

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System 276
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work 276
Lane Keeping System Precautions 276
Lane Keeping System Limitations 276
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off 277
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode 277
Lane Keeping System Settings 277
Aid Mode 277
Alert and Aid Mode 278
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 278

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 279
Blind Spot Assist 279
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage 281
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting 284

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System 285
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work 285
Blind Spot Information System Precautions 285
Blind Spot Information System Limitations 285
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission 286
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission 286
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off 286
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors 286
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage 287
Blind Spot Information System Indicators 288
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting 288

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert 290
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work 290
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions 290
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations 291
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off 291
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors 291
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage 291
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators 292
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting 292

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist 294
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work 294
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work 295
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions 295
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations 295
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control 296
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control 296
Distance Indication 297
Forward Collision Warning 297
Distance Alert 297
Automatic Emergency Braking 298
Evasive Steering Assist 298
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting 299

Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition 301
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work 301
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions 301
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations 301
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators 301
Speed Sign Recognition Settings 302
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting 302

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert 303
How Does Driver Alert Work 303
Driver Alert Precautions 303
Switching Driver Alert On and Off 303
Resetting Driver Alert 303
Driver Alert Indicators 304
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting 304

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition 305
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work 305
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions 305
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations 305
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators 306
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings 306
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting 307

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert 308
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work 308
Wrong Way Alert Precautions 308
Wrong Way Alert Limitations 308
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off 308
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting 309

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions 310
Roof Rack 310
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier 312

Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions 313
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net 313
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover - 5-Door 314
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover - Wagon 314
Luggage Compartment Hook - Wagon 315
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points 316

Connecting a Trailer

Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball 317
Connecting a Trailer 320

Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions - 4-Door 321
Towing a Trailer Precautions - 5-Door/Wagon 321
Towing a Trailer Limitations - 5-Door/Wagon 321
Loading Your Trailer - 5-Door/Wagon 321
Trailer Towing Hints - 5-Door/Wagon 322
Towing Weights and Dimensions 322

Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions 326
Breaking-In 326
Driving Economically 326
Driving Through Shallow Water 326
Floor Mats 327

Crash and Breakdown Information

Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off 329
Jump Starting the Vehicle 329
Post-Crash Alert System 330

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Post-Collision Braking 331
Automatic Crash Shutoff 331
Recovery Towing 332
Transporting the Vehicle 333
Fail-Safe Cooling 334

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions 336
Emergency Towing 336

Towing Your Vehicle - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions 337

Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit 338
Storing a Warning Triangle 338

Fuses

Fuse Precautions 339
Under Hood Fuse Box 339
Interior Fuse Box 343
Identifying Fuse Types 346
Fuses – Troubleshooting 346

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions 347
Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD 347
Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD 348
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, LHD 350
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, RHD 351
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, LHD 353
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, RHD 354
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™, LHD 355
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™, RHD 356
Engine Oil 357
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline 359
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel 359
Coolant 359
12V Battery 362
12V Battery – Troubleshooting 365
Exterior Bulbs 366

Track Use - ST

Track Use Precautions 373

Launch Control - ST, Manual Transmission

What Is Launch Control 374
Launch Control Precautions 374
Launch Control Limitations 374
Switching Launch Control On and Off 374
Using Launch Control 374
Launch Control Indicators 374

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior 375
Cleaning the Interior 377
Repairing Minor Paint Damage 379
Waxing Your Vehicle 379

Wheel and Tire Information

Using Summer Tires 380
Using Winter Tires 380
Using Snow Chains - Excluding: Active/ST 380
Using Snow Chains - Active 380
Using Snow Chains - ST 381
Using Snow Traction Devices - ST 381

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures 383
Inflating the Tires 383
Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: Active/ST 383
Tire Pressure Specifications - Active 385
Tire Pressure Specifications - ST 386
Inspecting the Tire for Damage 388
Tire Rotation 388

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit 390
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions 390
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit 390
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components 390
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit 391

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System 395
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions 395
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations 395
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 395
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 396
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 396
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen 396
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting 397

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire 399
Wheel Nuts 403

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door/Active 404
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon/Active 405
Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door, Excluding: Active/ST 406
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon, Excluding: Active/ST 407
Vehicle Dimensions - 4-Door 408
Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door/ST 409
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon/ST 410
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ 411
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue 411
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ 412
Cooling System Capacity and Specification 412
Washer Fluid Specification 413
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue 413
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ 414
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ 414
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™ 415

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™ 415
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue 416
Brake Fluid Specification 416

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number 417
Vehicle Identification Plate 417

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle 419
Connected Vehicle Requirements 419
Connected Vehicle Limitations 419
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network 419
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network 419
Connected Vehicle Settings 420
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting 420

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot 422
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password 422
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting 423

Audio System

Audio System Precautions 424
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off 424
Selecting the Audio Source 424
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source 424
Adjusting the Volume 424
Setting a Memory Preset 424
Muting the Audio 424
Scrolling Through Menu Items 425
Selecting a Menu Item 425
Adjusting the Sound Settings 425
Setting the Clock and Date 425
FM Radio 425
Switching the Display On and Off 426
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio 426

Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions 427
Center Display Limitations 427
Status Bar 427
Information On Demand Screen 428
Rebooting the Center Display 428

Voice Interaction

What is Voice Interaction 429
Setting the Wake Word 429
Beginning a Voice Interaction 429
Voice Interaction Examples 429

Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In 431
Alexa Built-In Requirements 431
Signing In to Your Account 431
Using Alexa Built-In 431
Alexa Built-In Settings 431

Phone

Phone Precautions 433
Connecting Your Phone 433
Phone Menu 433
Making and Receiving a Phone Call 435
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off 436

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device 437
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® 437

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Apps

App Precautions 438
App Requirements 438
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device 438
Enabling Apps on an Android Device 438
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off 438
Switching Android Auto On and Off 439

Navigation

Connected Navigation 440
Accessing Navigation 440
Navigation Map Updates 440
Adjusting the Map 440
Live Traffic 440
Setting a Destination 440
Waypoints 441
Route Guidance 441

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates 442
Software Update Settings 442
Software Update Indicators 443

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset 444

Your Authorized Dealer

Authorized Dealer Directory 445

Service Intervals

Service Intervals 451

Customer Information

Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment 452
Declaration of Conformity 452
REACH 452
Radio Frequency Certification Labels 452
Replacement Parts Recommendation 495
Mobile Communications Equipment 496
eCall User Information 496
End User License Agreement 500

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility 526

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

Note: *Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.*

Features and Options

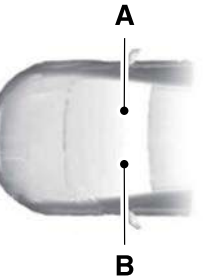
Note: *This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.*

Illustrations

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SPECIAL NOTICES

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights;

a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,

b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,

c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,

d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects, you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Maufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA

The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See* ***Connected Vehicle*** *(page 419).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 438).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 444).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - VEHICLES WITH: EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA - VEHICLES WITH: ECALL

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit *www.sustainability.ford.com*.

France Only

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

STEERING WHEEL - EXCLUDING: ST

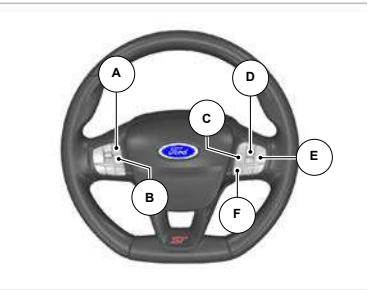
A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 250).

B See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 273). See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 274).

C See **Beginning a Voice Interaction** (page 429).

D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 114).

STEERING WHEEL - ST



A See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 250).

B See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 273). See **Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off** (page 274).

C See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 265).

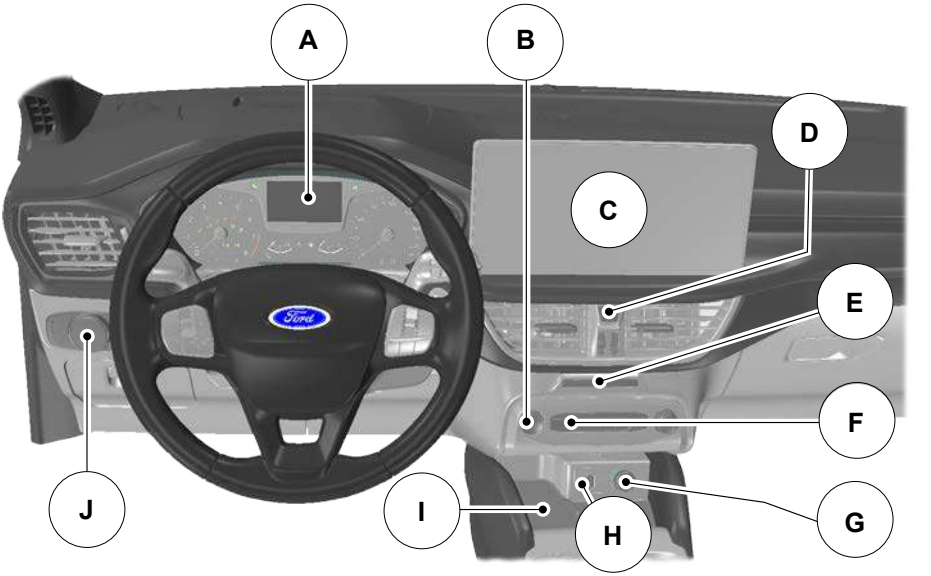
D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 117). See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 114).

E See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 265).

F See **Beginning a Voice Interaction** (page 429).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD



A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 108). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107).

B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 159).

C See **Status Bar** (page 427).

D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 329).

E See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 45).

F See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 244).

G See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 154).

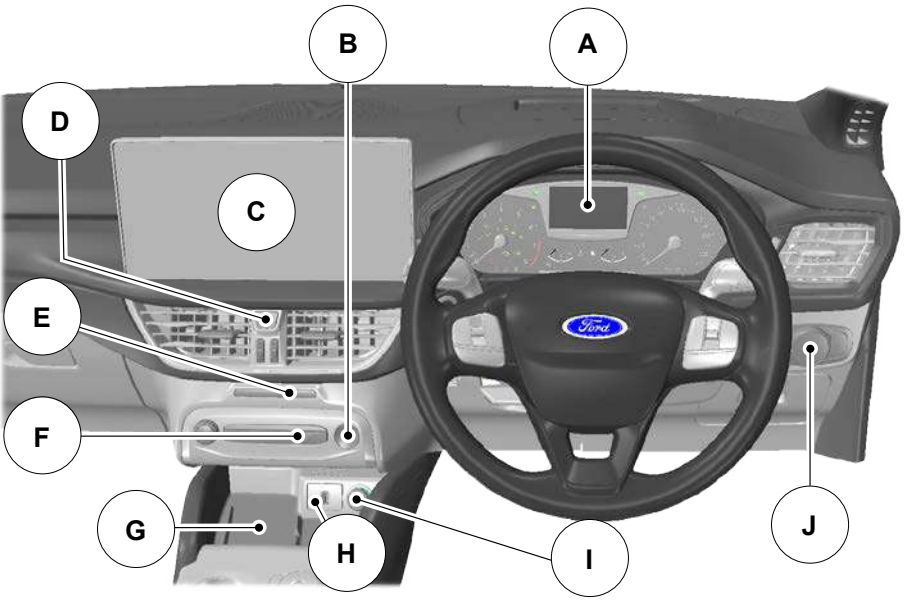
H See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 152).

I See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 157).

J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 83).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 107). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 108).

B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 159).

C See **Status Bar** (page 427).

D See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 329).

E See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 45).

F See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 244).

G See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 157).

H See **Playing Media Using the USB Port** (page 152).

I See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 154).

J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 83).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

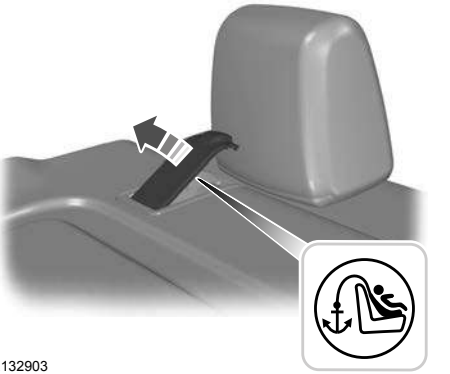
WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS

Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS - 4-DOOR

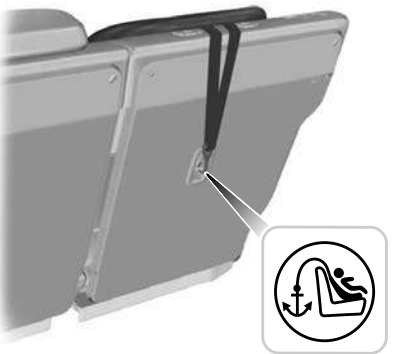


E132903

For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are behind the second row seats.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS - 5-DOOR/WAGON



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag **ON**.	X	X	UF[1]	UF[1]	UF[1]
Front passenger seat with airbag **OFF**.	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]
Rear seats.[2]	U	U	U	U	U

[1] We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

[2] Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	X	E[1]	C, D, E[1]	A, B, B1[1]	C, D[1]

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
	Fixture.	X	R1[1]	R1, R2, R3[1]	F2, F2X, F3[1]	R2, R3[1]
	Size type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

[1] The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag **ON**.	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3[1]	B2, B3[1]	X

[1] The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base.[1]	ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only.
40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base.[1]	ISOFIX and support leg (base).
100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix M i-Size.[1, 2]	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

[1]We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

[2]We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: *Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.*

WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat

Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion

WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Note: *To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.*

Note: *To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.

A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

Note: *Make sure that you properly fasten the seatbelt tongue in the seatbelt buckle.*

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

Note: *The rear outer seatbelts can lock if you return the seat backrest from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the seatbelt lock, feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.*

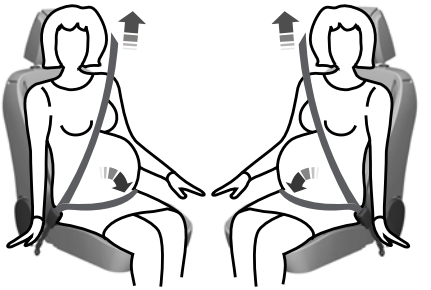
Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY

WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT

WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

E183582

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.

The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

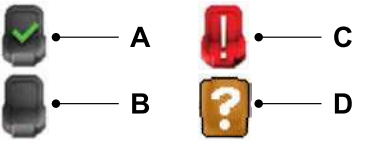
The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.*

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



A Seatbelt fastened.

B Seatbelt not fastened.

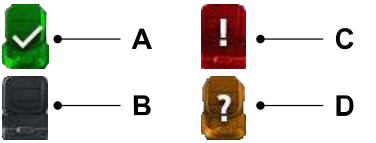
C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.

D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Information***.
4. Select ***Seatbelts***.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



A Seatbelt fastened.

B Seatbelt not fastened.

C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.

D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Status Information***.
3. Select ***Seat belts***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

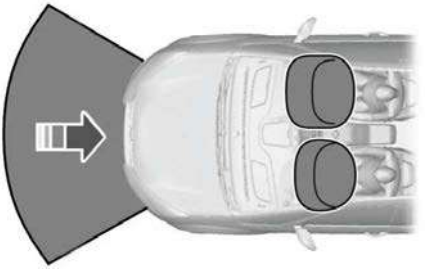
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

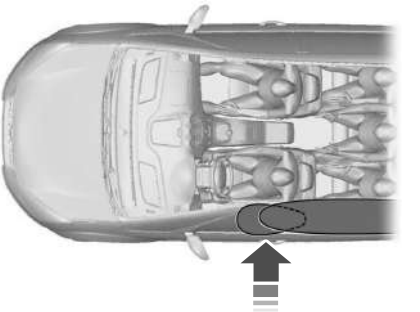
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

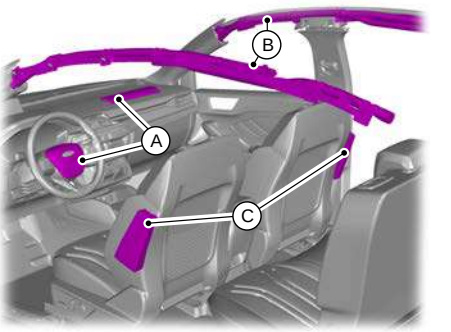
WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

AIRBAG LOCATIONS



A Front Airbags.

B Side Curtain Airbags.

C Side Airbags.

Note: *The location of airbags are indicated by the word Airbag.*

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

The passenger airbag indicator shows if the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled or disabled.

Note: *When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.*

It illuminates when the airbag is on.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

It illuminates when the airbag is off.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Passenger airbag***.
4. Switch ***Passenger airbag*** on or off.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS

If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

Emergency Assistance is a system that automatically uses your paired phone to call the emergency services in the event of a severe accident.

HOW DOES EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, your vehicle can contact emergency services by dialing the emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 25).

Note: *If any user sets Emergency Assistance to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assistance is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Not all crashes deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone, SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time, about 10 seconds, to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

WARNING: Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

WARNING: For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Emergency Assistance works correctly when all of the following occur:

- SYNC works properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assistance feature is set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle has battery power and is in a territory where Emergency Assistance is supported.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.*

Note: *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- Russia.
- Ukraine.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 496).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to deactivate the high voltage battery, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 25).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL

WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: *Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.*

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: *After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.*

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

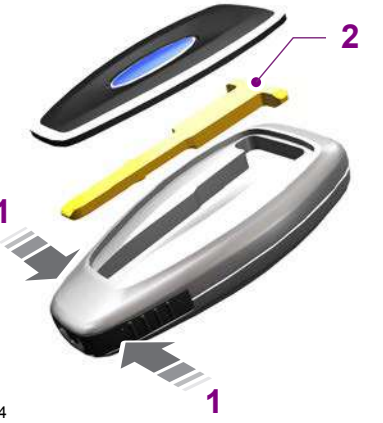
Note: *Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE

The passive key contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

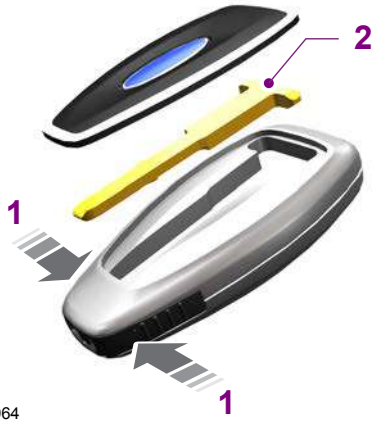
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

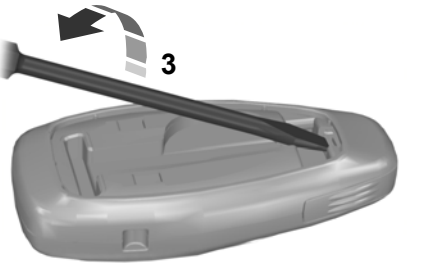
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.

2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



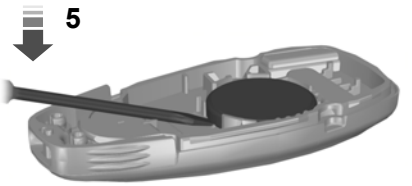
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.

E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

6. Insert a new battery with the **+** facing downward.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors

Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

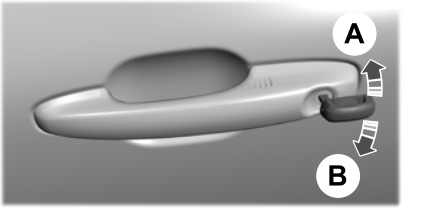
Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: *For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See* ***Keyless Entry*** *(page 60).*

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault, use the key blade to lock and unlock the driver door.



A Lock.

B Unlock.

You can individually lock or unlock all other doors. See **Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 56).

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.

Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

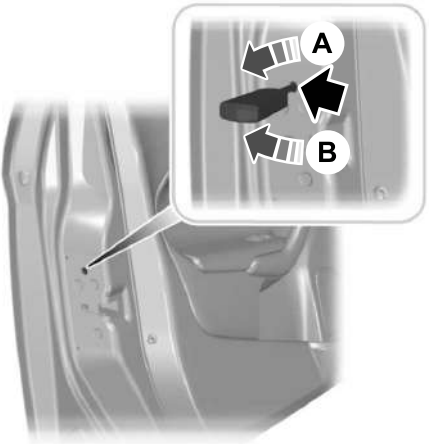
WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, individually lock the doors using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then individually unlock all other doors by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be individually locked until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.

Press the button to unlock all doors.

Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: *The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.*

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you press the unlock button once.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Locks***.
4. Press ***Unlocking***.
5. Press a setting.

DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR

HOW DOES THE DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR WORK

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.

When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.

Note: *You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: *Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.*

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Locks***.
4. Switch ***Auto Unlock*** on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a feature that warns you when you try to lock your vehicle but it has not locked. The warning occurs with a double chirp from the horn.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

A Mislock warning is performed if the following occurs:

- Any front door is open and you try to lock your vehicle once.
- Any door, the liftgate or the hood is open and you try to lock your vehicle twice within three seconds from the outside.

Note: *If any rear door, the liftgate or the hood is open and you try to lock your vehicle once, the direction indicators do not flash, but there is no warning chirp from the horn.*

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not warn you if your vehicle left behind unlocked.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Locks***.
4. Switch ***Mislock Chirp*** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

Autorelock is a feature that centrally locks all doors after an unintended unlock.

Autorelock Requirements

Autorelock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and locked.
2. The vehicle is unlocked with remote control or intelligent access (key free), if equipped.
3. No door is opened within 45 seconds.

Note: *Autorelock only relocks to central lock and alarm returns to its previous state.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp

Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

SWITCHING KEYLESS ENTRY ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Locks***.
4. Switch ***KeyFree*** on or off.

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle once.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors with touching the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle twice within three seconds or from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open the passenger door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

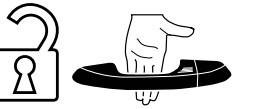
You can change between the unlocking modes on the touchscreen.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Locks***.
4. Press ***Unlocking***.
5. Select a setting.

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE DOORS USING KEYLESS ENTRY

UNLOCKING THE DOORS

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the top of the door handle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

LOCKING THE DOORS

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.

Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

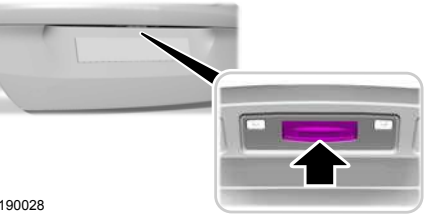
After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS

Touch a lock sensor twice within three seconds to double lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle.

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE LIFTGATE USING KEYLESS ENTRY

UNLOCKING THE LIFTGATE



E190028

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

Note: *A valid passive key must be within the detection range.*

LOCKING THE LIFTGATE

The liftgate locks after you fully close it.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 60). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

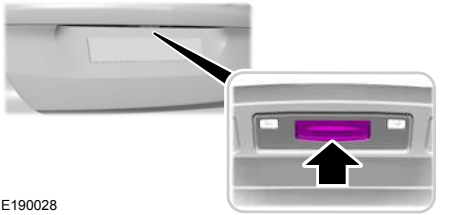
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

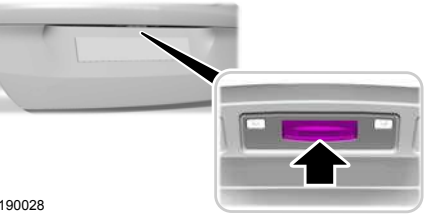
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate.



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

A recessed grip or handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS

Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

Press the button next to the lighting control.

Note: *Make sure that you shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or completely stop the vehicle for manual transmission.*

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

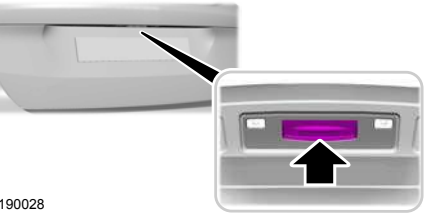
Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

Note: *If an authorized device is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate control button.*



E190028

2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

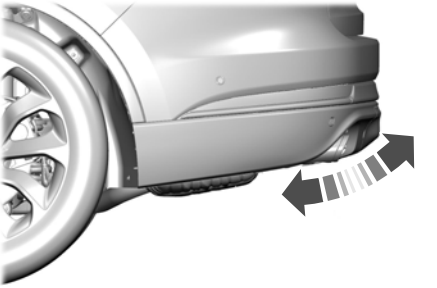
Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.

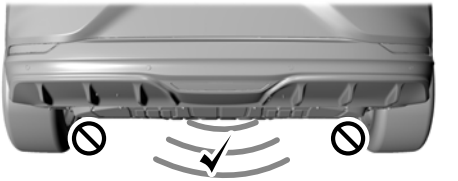


3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the authorized device away from the rear bumper detection area.*

SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Power Liftgate***.
4. Select a setting.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: *Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.*

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

Note: *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: *You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.*

Note: *The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

Press the button next to the lighting control. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: *Make sure that you shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or completely stop the vehicle for manual transmission.*

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

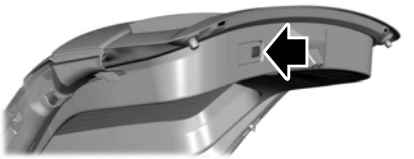
Note: *Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press and release the liftgate button. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

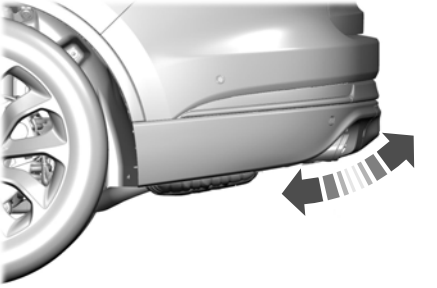
Note: *Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate.*

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the authorized device within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



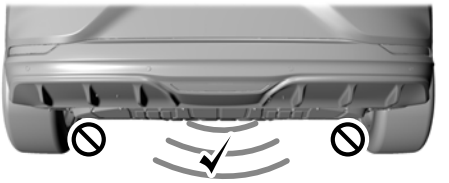
3. The liftgate closes.

Note: *A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.*

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: *Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.*

STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

Note: *Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Selections will vary depending on region or options.*

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: *To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.*

Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS

Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting.

In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to motion sensors on once the power is turned on.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Alarm System***.
4. Press ***Motion Sensors***.
5. Press a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Full guard	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the ***OK*** button.
Reduced guard	

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Alarm System Turn off motion sensors?	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the ***OK*** button.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Alarm System***.
4. Switch ***Ask on Exit*** on or off.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm system	

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

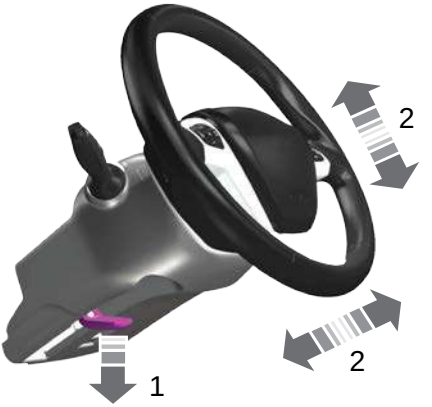
- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

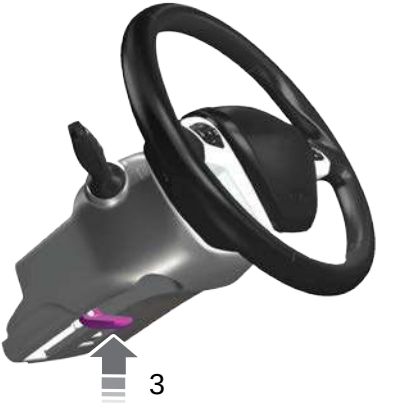
ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 136).*



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position ***I***.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: *The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: *You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF

To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls. The button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: *The engine must be running to use the heated steering wheel.*

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Note: *Depending on the remote start settings, the heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the engine was switched off.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

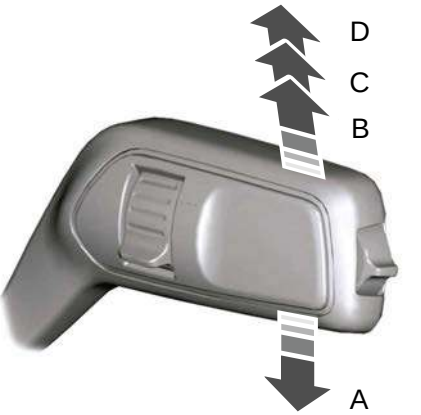
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 80). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 80). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 81).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF

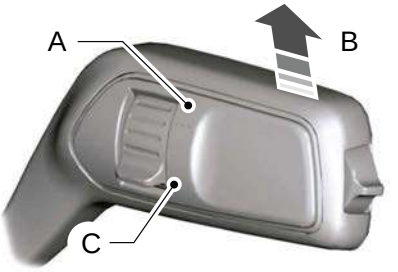


A	Single wipe.
B	Intermittent Wipe.
C	Normal Wipe.
D	High-speed Wipe

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Intermittent wipe



A Short wipe interval.

B Intermittent wipe.

C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

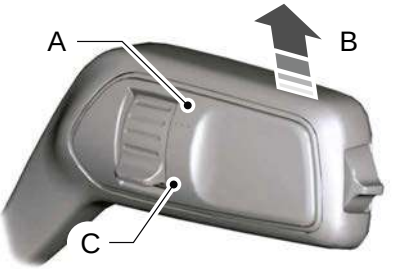
Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Wipers***.
4. Switch ***Rain Sensing*** on or off.

Note: *When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. In this case if you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.*

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



A High sensitivity.

B Autowipers on.

C Low sensitivity.

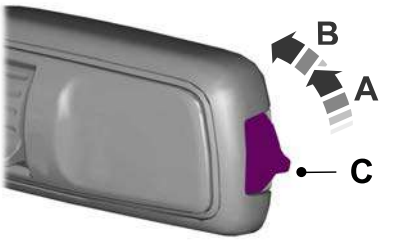
Use the rotary control to set the sensitivity of the autowipers.

With the sensitivity level you can adjust the frequency of the wipes depending on the rain intensity.

Note: *Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



A Intermittent wipe.
B Continuous wipe.
C Rear window wiper off.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Wipers***.
4. Switch ***Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)*** on or off.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

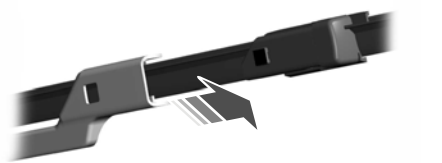
REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure.

1. Fully lift the wiper arm.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.*

2. Press the wiper blade locking button.



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

3. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

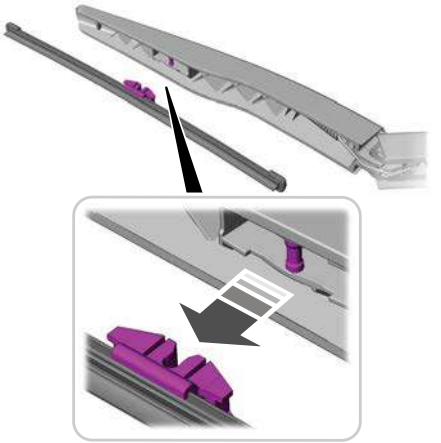
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.*



2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Wipers***.
4. Switch ***Courtesy Wipe*** on or off.

Note: *A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. When you switch it off the wipers finish the current washer request.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.*

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 413).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS

Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

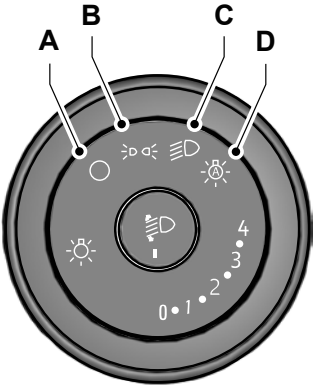
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 80). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 80). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 81).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



A Lamps off.

B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps on.

C Headlamps on.

D Autolamps on. See **What Are Autolamps** (page 85).

Rotate the control to make a selection.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: *Continuous activation only with headlamps on.*

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: *The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

WARNING: Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

WARNING: The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.
3. Press to close the control.

Note: *Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.*

Note: *Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.*

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps on Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam

It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

Headlamp Low Beam Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the headlamp low beam is on, this indicates that a headlamp low beam has failed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Lighting***.
4. Press ***Headlamp Delay***.
5. Select a setting.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS

Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.*

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator

It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.*

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

To switch both sides on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
3. Set the lighting control to the off position to switch the parking lamps off.

Note: *Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.

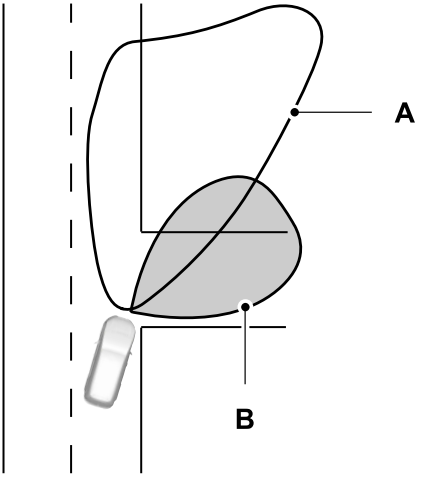
2.
Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.
3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

HOW DO CORNERING LAMPS WORK

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel or when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: *You cannot activate the system by switching the turn signal lamps on if your vehicle is stationary.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



A Headlamp beam.

B Cornering lamp beam.

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: *When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.*

2. Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: *Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

Note: *The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.*

Front Fog Lamps Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: *You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the low beam headlamps or the front fog lamps are on.*

2. Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: *Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

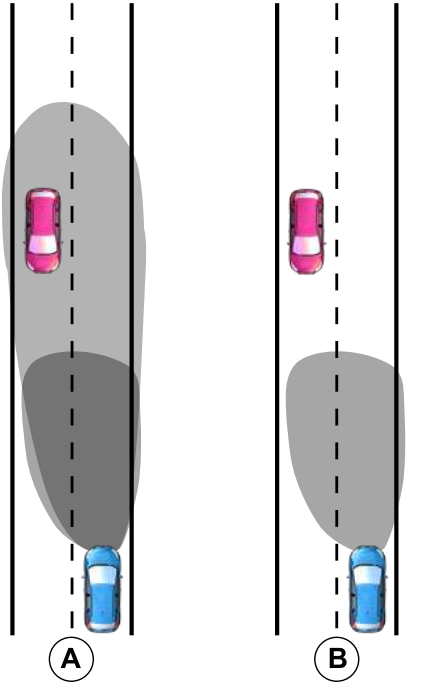
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See* ***Connected Vehicle Settings*** *(page 420). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*



A Without automatic high beam control.

B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Lighting***.
4. Switch ***Auto High Beam*** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

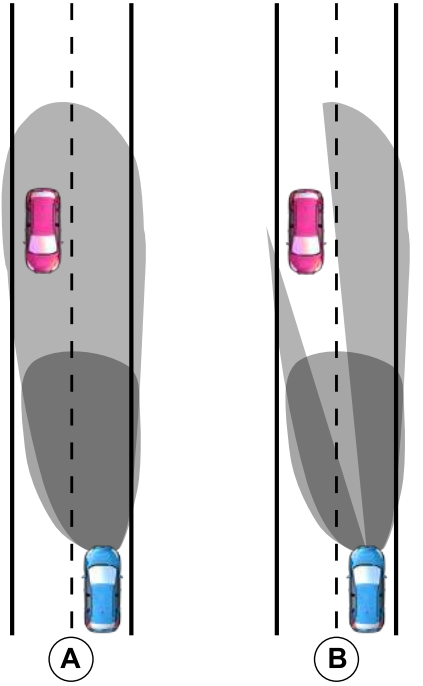
GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See* ***Connected Vehicle Settings*** *(page 420). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



A Without glare free high beam control.

B With glare free high beam control.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Lighting***.
4. Switch ***Glare-Free Lighting*** on or off.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

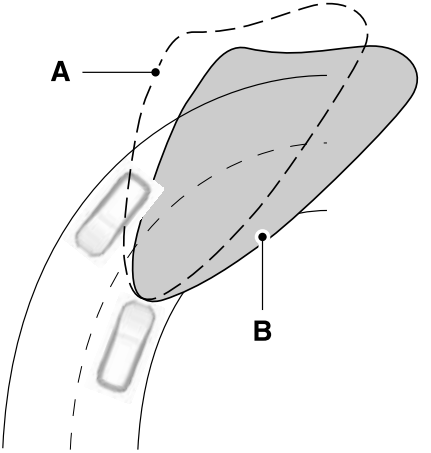
HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK

Adaptive front lighting adapts when you are steering around a curve, or if the camera detects lane markings indicating a curve or traffic signs indicating an intersection or a roundabout.

Note: *Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.*

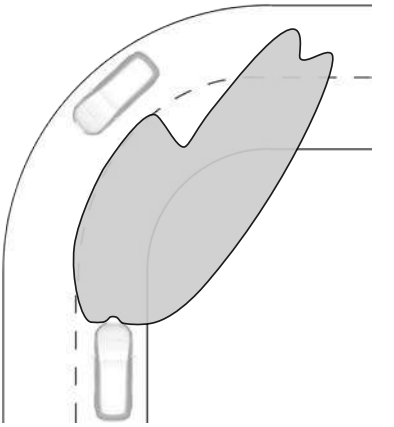
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Steering Around a Curve

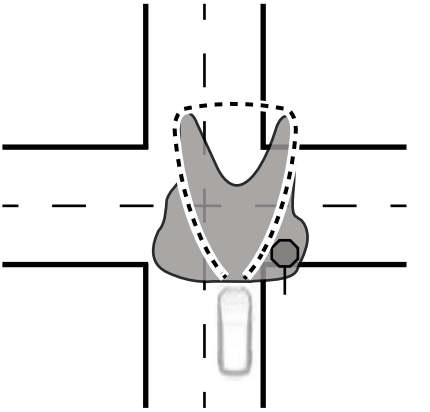


A Without adaptive front lighting.
B With adaptive front lighting.

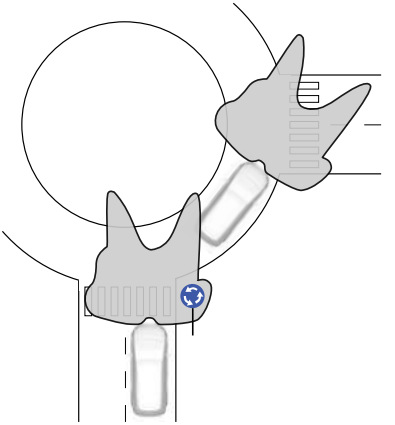
Camera Detects Lane Markings



Camera Detects Traffic Signs



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



The camera only detects traffic signs if your vehicle speed is below 50 km/h (31 mph).

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Lighting***.
4. Press ***Adaptive Headlamps Setup***.
5. Select a setting.

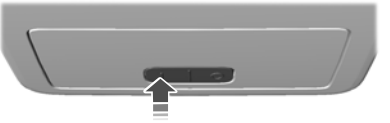
ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

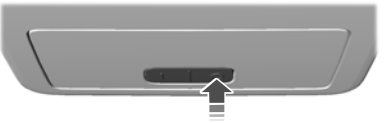
ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Advanced front lighting features Temporarily unavailable See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check adaptive headlamps See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

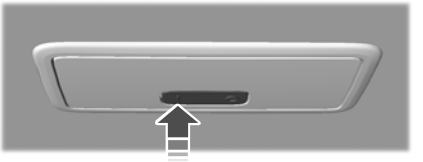
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

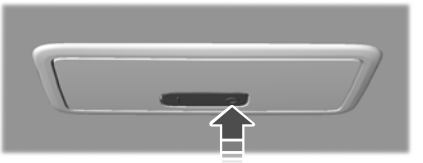
SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF





SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



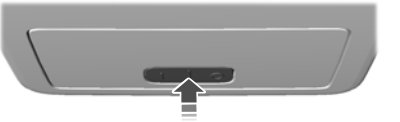


INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: *If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.

Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Switch the ignition on.

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the ambient light.*

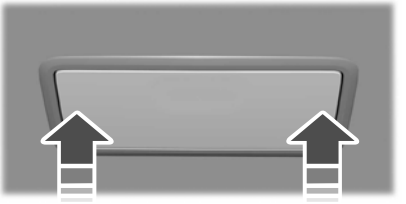
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Note: *Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF

When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: *If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.

Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Switch the ignition on.

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the ambient light.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

Note: *The moonroof stops in the vent position.*

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Windows***.
4. Switch ***Global Open*** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See* ***What Is Window Bounce-Back*** *(page 101).*

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Windows***.
4. Switch ***Global Close*** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the window control switch within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS

WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.

Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

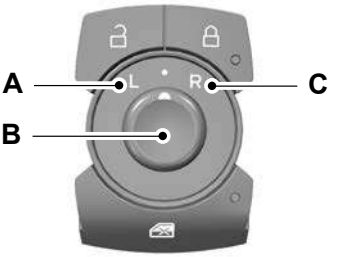
Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

Note: *A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



A Left-hand mirror position.

B Mirror adjustment control.

C Right-hand mirror position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass.

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Mirrors***.
4. Switch ***Autofold*** on and off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUNSHADE

Opening the Sunshade

WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the sunshade and get caught in a closing sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sunshade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Press and release the rear of the control.

Closing the Sunshade

WARNING: When closing the sunshade, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, press the switch a second time and reverse the sunshade immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sunshade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Press and release the front of the control.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF

Opening the Moonroof

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the rear of the control again to open the moonroof.

Closing the Moonroof

WARNING: When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Press and release the front of the control.

VENTING THE MOONROOF

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Press and release the rear of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

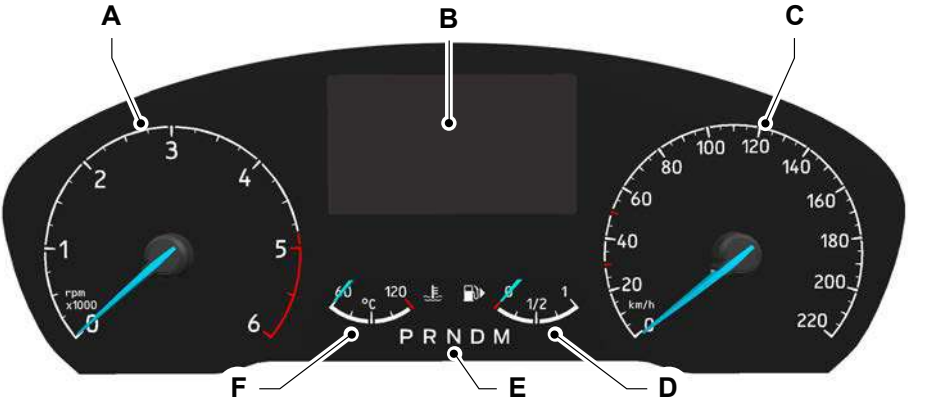
The moonroof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

OVERRIDING MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

Press and hold the front of the switch within a few seconds to override bounce-back.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

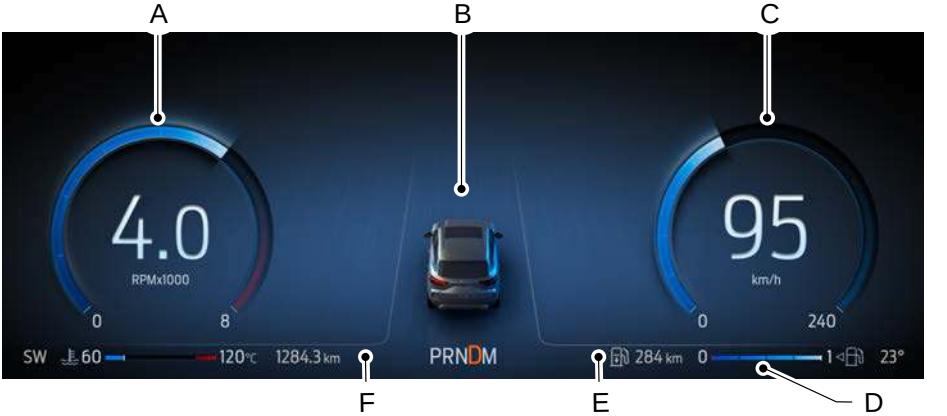
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



A Tachometer.
B Information display.
C Speedometer.
D Fuel gauge.
E Automatic transmission position indicators.
F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



A	Tachometer.
B	Instrument cluster display.
C	Speedometer.
D	Fuel gauge.
E	Distance to empty.
F	Information bar.

TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi).

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Airbag Warning Lamp

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Battery Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp

It flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 221).

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

WARNING: If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 357).

Engine Warning Lamps

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The on-board diagnostics system has detected a malfunction to the emissions control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the diesel particulate filter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Hood Ajar Warning Lamp

It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp

It illuminates when the system activates.

Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp

It illuminates when the ignition is on and the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Beam Headlamp Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the low beam headlamps are on, this indicates that a low beam headlamp bulb has failed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp

It illuminates when one or more of the tires are significantly under inflated. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 395).

Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp

It illuminates if the system detects the diesel exhaust fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control

It illuminates when you switch the system on.

It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

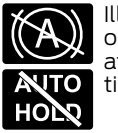
Automatic High Beam

It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Auto Hold Active

Illuminates when the system is active.

Auto Hold Unavailable



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Auto-Start-Stop

It illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

It illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

Blind Spot Information System Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the system on or in conjunction with a message.

Cruise Control

It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Direction Indicator

It flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

Note: *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.*

Door Ajar

It illuminates when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Front Fog Lamp

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Fuel Operated Heater Operating

It illuminates when the fuel operated heater is currently in operation.

Glow Plug Indicator

If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting the engine.

Hazard Flasher

It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

High Beam Headlamp

It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Lamps on Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Lane Keeping Alert

It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator

It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher or lower gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.

Stability Control and Traction Control

It flashes during operation.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

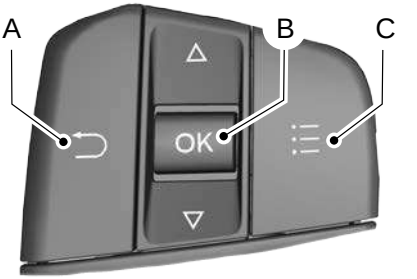
If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

E356763



A Return button.

B OK button.

C Menu button.

Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

OK Button

Use the ***OK*** button to make a selection.

You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

Menu button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Menu Item
Trip computer 1 or ***Trip computer 2***
MyView
Driver assist.
Navigation
Audio

Menu Item
Phone
Settings
Head-up display (HUD)

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***MyView*** and press the menu button.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the ***OK*** button.

Hybrid Gauge

The Hybrid Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed.

When the available maximum power is limited the gauge shows gray lines showing the reduction in available power. During deceleration, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system being returned to the high voltage battery.

Enabling Hybrid Gauge

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Hybrid gauge***.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***MyView*** and press the menu button.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the ***OK*** button.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Language***.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Measurement unit***.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Temperature unit***.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Tyre pressure***.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

SWITCHING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY AUDIBLE WARNINGS ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Display***.
3. Select ***Chimes***.
4. Choose your applicable setting.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

TRIP SUMMARY

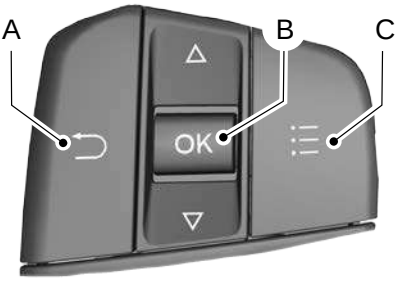
Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



A Return button.

B OK button.

C Menu button.

Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Menu Button

Press to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator

A square symbol indicates feature status. It illuminates blue when a feature is on and does not illuminate when a feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Trip/energy
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Navigation
Phone
Settings
Head-Up Display (HUD)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***MyView***.
3. Select ***Configure MyView***.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the ***OK*** button.

Note: *The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.*

Configure MyView
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
Fuel Economy
Eco Behaviour
Tyre Pressure
Hybrid Gauge
Launch Control
Performance Gauges
Measurements
Driver Assistance
Calm Screen

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.*

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Display Settings***.
4. Select ***Gauge Style***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

Hybrid Gauge

The Hybrid Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed.

When the available maximum power is limited, the gauge displays the reduction in available power on the blue bar. During deceleration, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system being returned to the high voltage battery.

Enabling Hybrid Gauge

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***MyView***.
3. Select ***Configure MyView***.
4. Select ***Hybrid Gauge***.
5. Press the ***OK*** button.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - EXCLUDING: MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

2. Select ***MyView***.
3. Select ***Configure MyView***.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the ***OK*** button.

Note: *The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.*

Configure MyView
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
Fuel Economy
Eco Behaviour
Tyre Pressure
Hybrid Gauge
Launch Control
Performance Gauges
Measurements
Driver Assistance
Calm Screen

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.*

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Display Settings***.
4. Select ***Gauge Style***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

TRIP SUMMARY

Displays the trip summary when you switch off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
3. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.

RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

Resetting the Individual Trip Values

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
3. Select ***Reset individual values***.
4. Select the value to reset.
5. Press and hold the ***OK*** button for a few seconds.

CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Navigate to the main screen.
2. Select ***Trip computer 1*** or ***Trip computer 2***.
3. Select ***Configure view***.
4. Select the value to display.
5. Press the ***OK*** button.

TRIP DATA

Trip data includes the following:

- Trip Odometer - Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.
- Trip Timer - Registers the total time since you last reset the value.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed since you last reset the value.
- Distance to Empty - Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle could travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.
- Instantaneous Fuel - Indicates the current fuel consumption.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***MyView***.
3. Select ***Configure MyView***.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 115).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TRIP DATA

Trip data includes the following:

- Trip Odometer - Registers the total distance since you last reset the value.
- Trip Timer - Registers the total time since you last reset the value.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption since you last reset the value.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE HEAD UP DISPLAY

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Head-Up Display (HUD)***.
3. Switch ***Head-Up Display (HUD)*** on or off.

HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Head-Up Display (HUD)***.
3. Select ***Adjustment***.

Menu Item	Action
Adjustment	Press the ***OK*** button.
Position	1. Press the ***OK*** button. 2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical position of the blue frame. • Make sure that you can see all of the blue frame. • Do not physically move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
Brightness	1. Press the ***OK*** button. 2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the brightness of the display screen. • The system adjusts the brightness based on how dark it is. If you set the brightness to a high level, the system reduces the brightness at night.
Vertical size	1. Press the ***OK*** button. 2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical size of the display screen. • A small vertical size could be more suitable if you sit in a high position.

Note: *When you save a memory preset position, your current HUD settings are also saved to that memory preset position.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HEAD UP DISPLAY INDICATORS

The indicator displays in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The head up display indicator could illuminate to supplement an information message.*

HEAD UP DISPLAY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEAD UP DISPLAY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Heads-up display System malfunction See manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head-up display To position use the information display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the instrument cluster display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.*

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
4. Switch ***Remote Start*** on or off.

Note: *To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled. See* ***Connecting FordPass to the Modem*** *(page 419).*

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

Note: *The turn signal lamps flash twice.*

Note: *The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.*

Note: *The horn sounds if the system fails to start.*

Note: *All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Note: *You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.*

Note: *The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.*

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.*

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS

Climate Control Settings

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
4. Press ***Climate Control***.
5. Press a setting.

Note: *If you select* ***Auto****, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).*

Note: *If you select* ***Last Settings****, the system remembers the last used settings.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
4. Press ***Seats***.
5. Press a setting.

Note: *If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Remote Start Setup***.
4. Press ***Duration***.
5. Press a setting.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.

Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.

Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button.

Note: *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*

Note: *In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: *You can press **+** or **-** to set the blower motor speed.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 127).

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

Note: *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.

Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: *You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.*

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button.

Note: *When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.*

Note: *Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.*

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents.In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press ***MAX A/C***.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF

Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.

Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.

Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button.

Note: *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*

Note: *In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED WINDSHIELD

Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.*

Note: *The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

Press the button to set the blower motor speed.

Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: *You can press **+** or **-** to set the blower motor speed.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 127).

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

Note: *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.

Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: *You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.*

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents

Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press ***MAX A/C***.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release ***A/C***.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

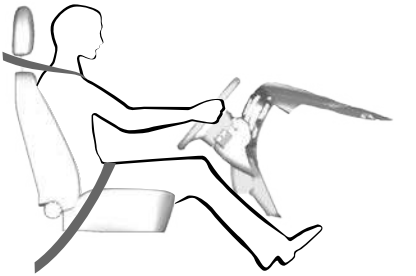
WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNING: Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 2-WAY MANUAL SEAT

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

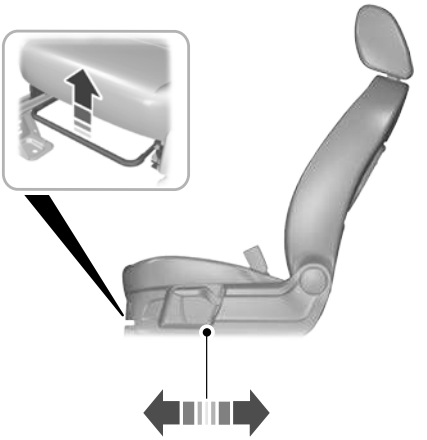
1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

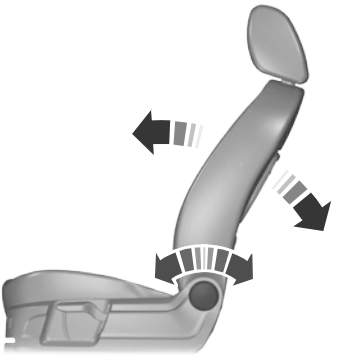
WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 4-WAY MANUAL SEAT

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

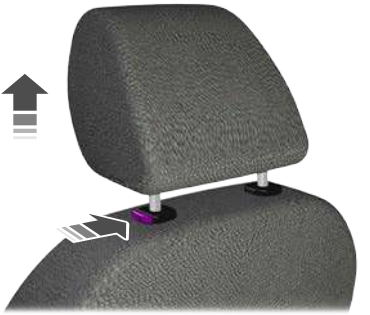
1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

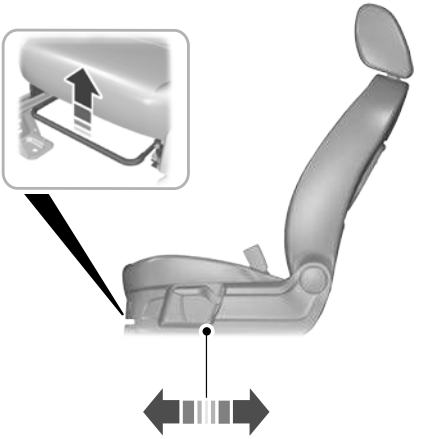
1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

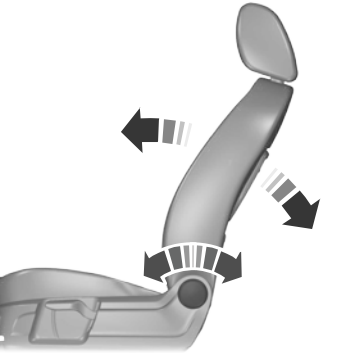
MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



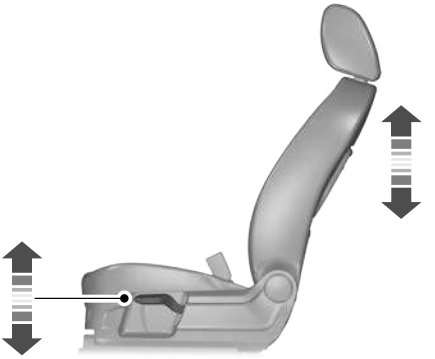
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT

MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 6-WAY MANUAL SEAT

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

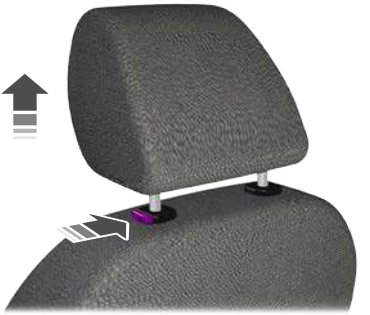
1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.

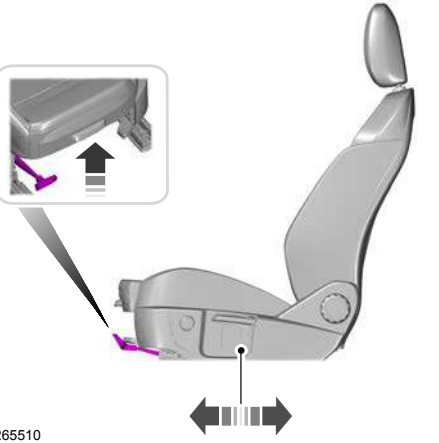


2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

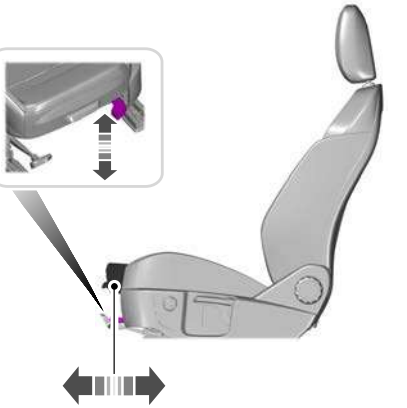
WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



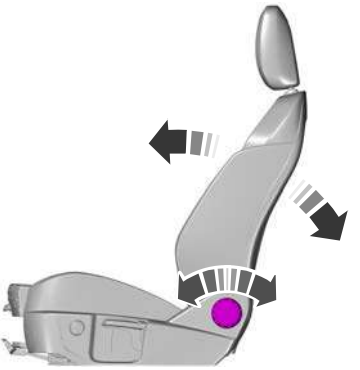
E265510

ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



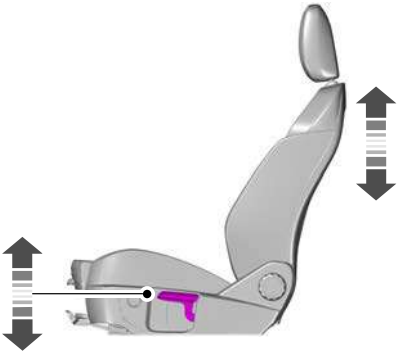
E265511

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



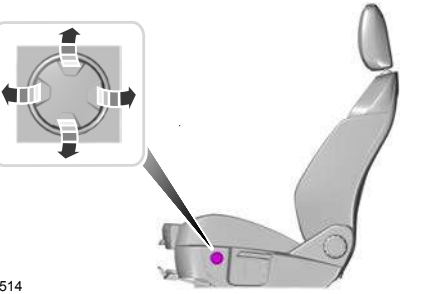
E265512

ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



E265513

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



E265514

POWER SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER 6-WAY POWER SEAT

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

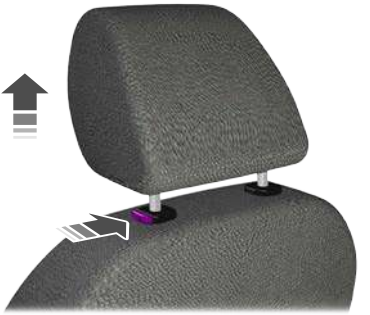
Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.



2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

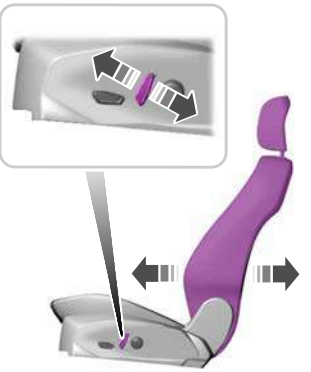
WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

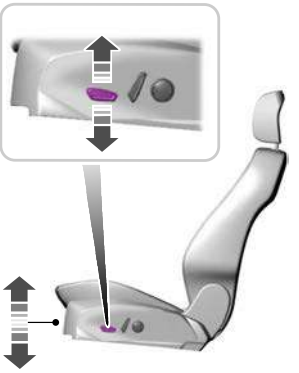
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Reclining the seat back can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

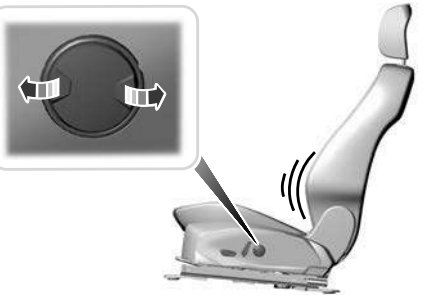
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: *The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REAR SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

MANUAL SEATS

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

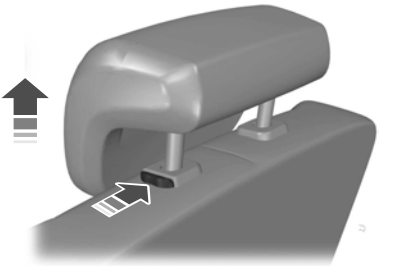
Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Fold the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



E265267

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - WAGON

WARNING: Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

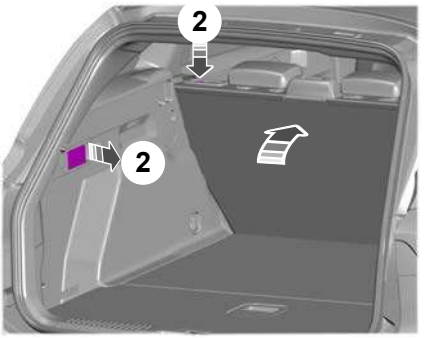
WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

WARNING: Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

1. Lower the head restraints.

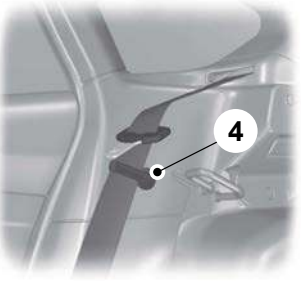
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



E265931

2. Press and hold the unlock button on the top of the seat or pull the lever on the rear quarter trim panel.
3. Push the seat backrest forward.

Note: *Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.*



E265248

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the trim.

Note: *Make sure that the seatbelt is fully retracted.*

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST - 4-DOOR/5-DOOR

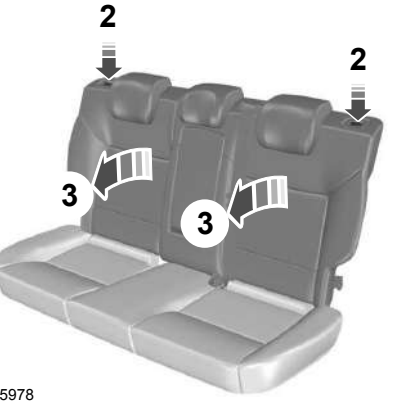
WARNING: Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

WARNING: Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

1. Lower the head restraints.

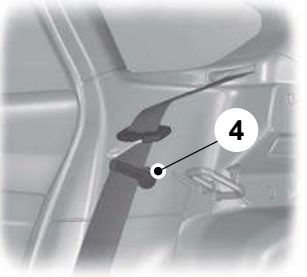


E265978

2. Press and hold the unlock button.
3. Push the seat backrest forward.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Do not attempt to fold the rear seat cushion forward.*



E265248

4. Place the seatbelts in the clips on the trim.

Note: *Make sure that the seatbelt is fully retracted.*

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest until it latches in the upright position.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When ***Child Seat Installed*** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When ***Child Seat Installed*** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the* ***Rear Occupant Alert*** *is set to* ***Alert & Horn****. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Rear Occupant Alert***.
4. Select ***Alert & Horn*** or ***Alert Only*** or ***Off***.

Note: *The default setting is **Alert Only**.*

Note: *If you choose **Alert Only**, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.*

Note: *Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch on again.*

Switching *Child Seat Installed* On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Press ***Rear Occupant Alert***.
4. Switch ***Child Seat Installed*** on or off.

Note: *The default setting is on.*

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS

Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press ***Close*** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: *Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports

The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

Charge Only USB Ports

The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Sources***.

Press the USB option.

Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.

Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Data Transfer USB Ports

You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports

You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets could be in the following locations:

- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the luggage compartment.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CIGAR LIGHTER PRECAUTIONS

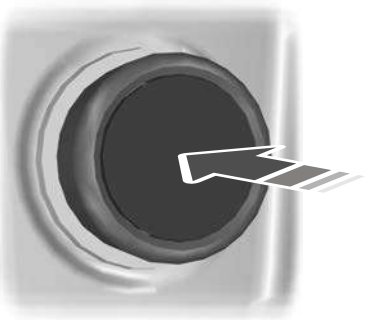
WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.*

USING THE CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: *During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.*

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The charging area is on the center console.

E265426

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.

Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Wireless Charger Active	Displays when wireless charging has started.
Charging stopped Phone misaligned or object detected between phone and charger. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Displays when wireless charging has stopped. Remove objects from the charging surface and place phone on center of charging surface.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CUP HOLDERS

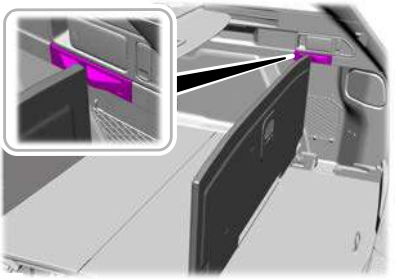
CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

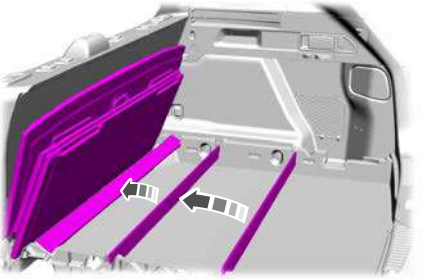


Space is available below the loadspace floor to stow items.

ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FLOOR

You can fold or remove the loadspace floor to increase the available loadspace height.

Note: *We recommend you fold the loadspace floor before you remove it.*



1. Fold the center section of the loadspace floor toward the front of your vehicle.
2. Fold the loadspace floor upward toward the front of your vehicle.

Note: *You can use the under floor storage divider bar in different positions, and to fix the load floor in storage position behind the rear seat.*

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *There is only one divider bar per vehicle.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH

Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: *Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.*

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

Glow Plug Indicator

The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - GASOLINE

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.*

4. Release the accelerator pedal.

5. Press the push button ignition switch.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - DIESEL

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle***.
3. Switch ***30min Max Idle*** on or off.

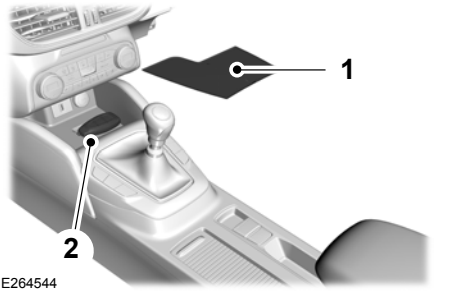
Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the ***OK*** or ***Reset*** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



E264544

1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.*

4. Release the accelerator pedal.

5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 163).

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).*

2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 163).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Your vehicle has a 48 volt mild hybrid system.

It is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The system uses regenerative charging during engine braking.

It switches the engine off when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

Regenerative charging results in a greater degree of engine braking.

Engine braking further increases following a brake pedal press. This is normal.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS

Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system is charging the battery.

Illuminates in the information display when the battery is assisting the powertrain in driving the vehicle.

Illuminates in the information display when the battery is providing a large amount of energy to the powertrain to support a higher rate of acceleration.

Illuminates in the information display when the mild hybrid system cannot provide energy to the powertrain.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

AUTO-START-STOP SETTINGS

SETTING THE ENGINE STOP SPEED

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Rolling StartStop: Speed Threshold***.
4. Press a setting.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: ***OFF*** *illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Note: *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

Stopping the Engine in Neutral

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.

Note: *You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.*

2. Press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

Restarting the Engine in Neutral

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Select a gear.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Shift into neutral.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Fully press the clutch pedal.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP — FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch ***MAX A/C*** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO_2 emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: ***OFF*** *illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

Note: *Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP — FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch ***MAX A/C*** on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO_2 emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter generator that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP — FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO_2 emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTO-START-STOP — FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO_2 emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

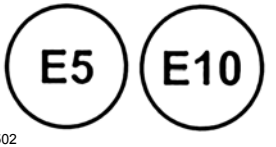
FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - GASOLINE

WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

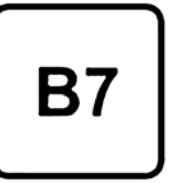
Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: *We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.*

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL

WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: *We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.*

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - E85

Do not modify the fuel system configuration or the components in the system. Do not replace the fuel system or the components with parts not specially designed to be used with E85.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification, or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel. Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Note: *When using E85, your vehicle may have higher fuel consumption.*

SWITCHING BETWEEN E85 AND GASOLINE

We do not recommend repeatedly alternating between E85 and gasoline. If you switch from using E85 to gasoline, or from gasoline to E85, add as much fuel as possible, at least half a tank.

Drive your vehicle immediately for a minimum of 8 km (5 mi) to allow it to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration. If you do not follow this procedure, you may experience a minor degradation in engine starting performance and slight fluctuations in engine speed at idle.

If you use E85 exclusively, we recommend that you fill the fuel tank with minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification at each scheduled oil change.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment or in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 182).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

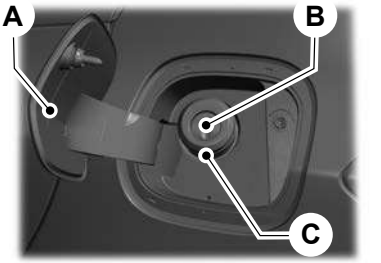
Note: *If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.*

Note: *You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.*

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



A Fuel filler door.

B Fuel filler inlet.

C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

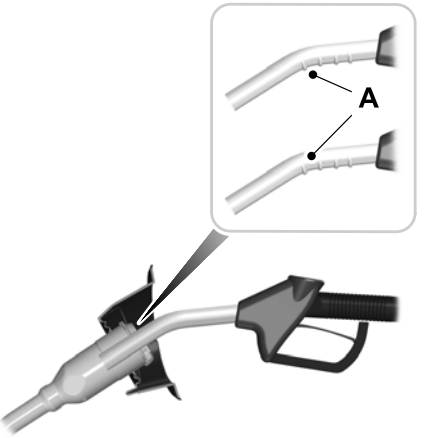
WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

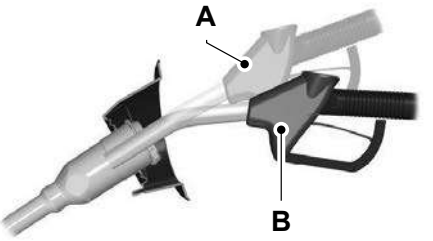
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

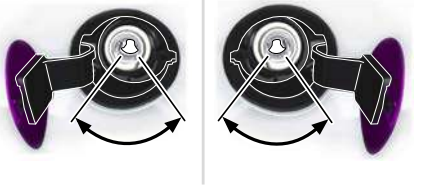


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

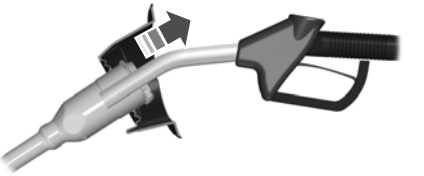
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with standard fuel tank.	52 L (11.4 gal)
Vehicles with smaller fuel tank.	42 L (9.2 gal)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Variant	Quantity
All.	47 L (10.3 gal)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

Variant	Quantity
All.	52 L (11.4 gal)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO_2 Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.5–6.5 (38–43)	6.3–5 (45–56)	5.7–4.4 (50–64)	6.8–5.3 (42–53)	6.4–5.1 (44–55)	116–146

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L ECOBLUE

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO_2 Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
6.5–4.9 (43–58)	5.2–4 (54–71)	4.6–3.5 (61–81)	5.5–4.2 (51–67)	5.3–4 (53–71)	106–139

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO_2 Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
13.4–12.6 (21–22)	8.2–7.4 (34–38)	7–6.4 (40–44)	7.8–7.1 (36–40)	8.3–7.8 (34–36)	180–190

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS

If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check fuel fill inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the information display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the information display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

WARNING: When the ***Exhaust filter cleaning*** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: *Avoid running out of fuel.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS

If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, or when the system is at the point of oversaturation, the powertrain warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. You may not be able to initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Exhaust filter cleaning	Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now	
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	
Exhaust filter drive completed	Your diesel particulate filter is clean.
Exhaust filter cleaned	Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter cleaning stopped	The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

Selective catalytic reduction is an engine emission control system that reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.

WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.

WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

Note: *The use and refilling of AdBlue® is mandatory for the vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store the AdBlue® container in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5ºC (23ºF) and 20ºC (68ºF).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- Do not store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.
- AdBlue® is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.

The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

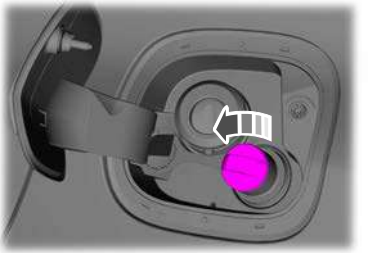
Note: *It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).*

Note: *If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.*

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

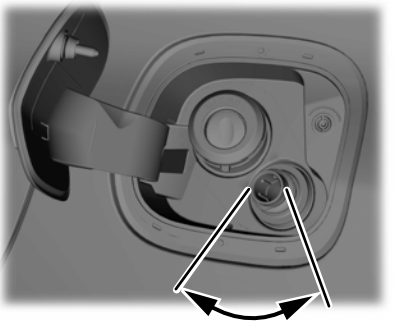
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: *The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.*

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

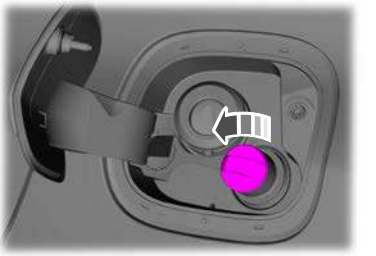
Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

Note: *The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.*

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Information***.
3. Select ***AdBlue® info***.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Vehicle Maintenance***.
3. Select ***AdBlue® Level***.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	10.4 L (2.3 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx	WSS-M99C130-A

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display.

Note: *When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.*

Note: *If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is that noise after switching off the engine?

- When you switch off the engine the selective catalytic reduction system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 329).
- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 180).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: *Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.*

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.

Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful particulates from the exhaust emissions.

HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate or a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS

Malfunction indicator lamp.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears. • Avoid prolonged engine idling. • Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	• Drive at a moderate speed. • Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration. • Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

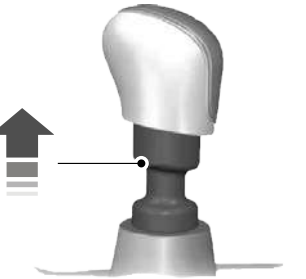
Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS

It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.

CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 217).

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)

WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: *A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).*

Note: *Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.*

Note: *You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.*

Note: *The electric parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).*

Note: *The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.*

Note: *Do not manually release the electric parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See* ***Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake*** *(page 222).*

Note: *Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See* ***How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work*** *(page 212).*

Note: *A tone could sound when you select park (P).*

REVERSE (R)

WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)

WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

LOW (L) - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

Note: *We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See* ***Towing a Trailer*** *(page 321).*

MANUAL (M) - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 210).

Note: *We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See* ***Towing a Trailer*** *(page 321).*

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The transmission selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Rotate the outer ring to select a position.

Note: *The position illuminates on the transmission selector.*

Note: *Your vehicle cannot shift from drive (D) to park (P) with a clockwise rotation. Your vehicle cannot shift from park (P) to drive (D) with a counter-clockwise rotation.*

3. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

Note: *The position could illuminate on the selector.*

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

Note: *The position could illuminate on the selector.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P) - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Note: *This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.*

Note: *Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.*

Note: *This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 221).

Note: *If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.*

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Press the manual (M) or low (L) button.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

Note: *You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.*

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if any of the following occur:

- You switch your vehicle off before shifting into park (P).
- You open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - VEHICLES WITH: PADDLE SHIFTERS

SHIFTING USING THE PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear.

Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: *Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.*

Note: *Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.*

Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gear.

Note: *We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.*

Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (**+**) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (**–**) to downshift.

Hold the right paddle for a few seconds to turn off the feature manually.

Note: *The feature switches off if neither paddle is pulled within a short period of time.*

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See* ***Towing a Trailer*** *(page 321).*

Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (**+**) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (**–**) to downshift.

Shift into drive (D) to switch the feature off.

STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WHAT IS STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off.

For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

Note: *You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with power on.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Note: *Automatic return to park is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See* ***Automatic Return to Park (P)*** *(page 212).*

STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE PRECAUTIONS

This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the 12V battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12V battery to run out of charge.

This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

ENTERING STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

5. Press the low (L) or manual (M) button.

Note: *A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters this mode.*

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.*

Note: *The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

EXITING STAY IN NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power the vehicle on and shift to drive (D) or reverse (R).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts to park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with the driver seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt with the driver door open.

Note: *Do not use Automatic Return to Park when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.*

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WHAT IS BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

Brake shift interlock allows you to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

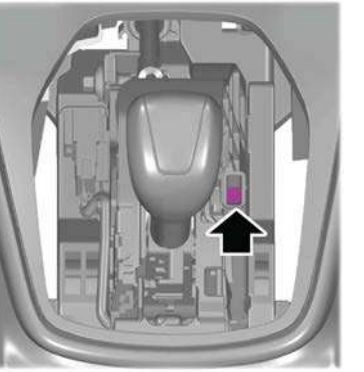
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

USING BRAKE SHIFT INTERLOCK

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the selector lever out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

1. Remove the panel.



2. Locate the access hole.
3. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, push the brake shift interlock lever toward the front of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission too hot Press brake Transmission overheating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, leave the engine running and allow the transmission to cool. Wait until the message disappears.
Transmission not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Select M to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Select L to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in neutral mode engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE ELECTRONIC LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL

The electronic limited-slip differential system distributes optimal torque between the wheels of the front axle, improving vehicle handling, traction and stability. The system is active at all times and requires no input from the driver.

Note: *If your vehicle is not at optimal operating conditions or a system fault is present, a warning may display in the instrument cluster. Depending on the warning, you may need to service your vehicle.*

Operating the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential with a Spare or Mismatched Tires

If your vehicle has an electronic limited-slip differential, do not use a spare tire of a different size than the tire provided. If you have a spare tire installed, a message may appear indicating the system has disabled automatically or reduced function to prevent system overheat and damage. We recommend you reinstall the repaired or replaced spare tire as soon as possible. When you replace the spare tire, the system resumes normal operation the next time you start your vehicle.

Trailer Towing

The electronic limited-slip differential enhances vehicle stability during trailer tow operation. During high demand trailering events, such as steep slopes, high speeds or with a spare tire, the system may provide a warning in the instrument cluster and reduce function or enter a temporarily disabled state. To resume normal function, stop the vehicle in a safe location and allow the unit to adequately cool. Once the system reaches normal operating temperatures, system function restores and the electronic limited-slip differential restored message displays.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ELECTRONIC LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRONIC LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
Check electronic limited slip differential	Displays when the system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electronic limited slip differential off See Owner's Manual	Displays when the system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electronic limited slip differential restored to normal	Displays when the electronic limited slip differential system resumes normal function.
Electronic limited slip differential temporarily disabled	Displays if the electronic limited slip differential system temporarily turns off due to overheating or an undersized spare tire. If you have an undersized spare tire installed, replace the spare tire with a full-sized tire as soon as possible. If not, stop the vehicle in a safe location and allow the system to cool.
Electronic limited slip differential Reduced torque	Displays if the electronic limited slip differential has limited functionality. This could be due to an undersized spare tire or caused by the system overheating. If you have an undersized spare tire installed, replace the spare tire with a full-sized tire as soon as possible. If you do not have an undersized spare tire installed, the vehicle has reduced functionality. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID

WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the ***MIN*** mark or above the ***MAX*** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: *To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.*

Only use fluid that meets our specifications.

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS

WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

BRAKES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check brake system	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn. Have the system checked.

There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning Wheels*** *(page 375).*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Apply the parking brake and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Power the vehicle off and remove the keys or remote control whenever you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

The switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

Note: *The electric parking brake could apply when the transmission selector is in park (P).*

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into first gear, switch the ignition off and remove the keys or remote control before you leave your vehicle.

WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.

The switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away When Towing a Trailer Uphill

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

Note: *The electric parking brake also automatically releases if you shift into a gear and release the clutch pedal without pressing the accelerator pedal.*

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 329).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System

It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake

When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the brakes. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Message	Details
Park brake released	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is applied.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Hill Start Assist*** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill start assist not available	Displays when the system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF

WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt before you switch the system on.

Press the button on the center console.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the system off before using an automatic car wash.*

USING AUTO HOLD - 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/ 6-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.*

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

USING AUTO HOLD - 7-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION/ 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) and press the brake pedal.*

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS

Illuminates when the system is active. Your vehicle remains stationary after you release the brake pedal.

Illuminates when the system is on but unavailable to hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF

WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Traction Control*** on or off.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Note: *Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature.*

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

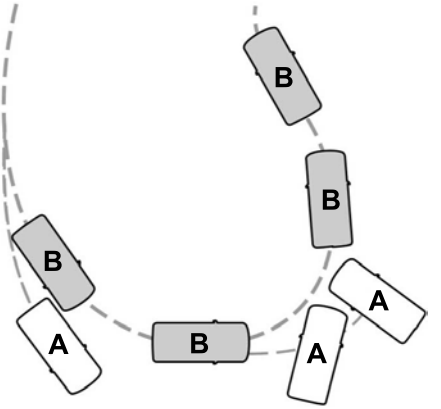
TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.
Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck?	You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



A Without stability control.

B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: ST

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - ST

WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport, Track or Drift mode when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Reducing Stability Control

ESC Press the button on the instrument panel. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: *Stability control only reduces and is not fully switched off.*

Note: *If you switch stability control to reduced mode, traction control turns off.*

Note: *Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.*

Switching the System Off

ESC Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the system off. A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display. Press the button again to switch the system on.

Note: *If you switch stability control off, traction control also turns off*

Note: *Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Adaptive cruise control is disabled when you select this mode.*

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR

Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system turns off if there is a malfunction.*

STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

STABILITY CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

OFF Illuminates when you switch the system to reduced mode or off. It also illuminates if you select track mode.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
ESC Sport mode	The status of the stability control system after you switched it to reduced mode.
ESC off	The status of the stability control system after you switched it off.
ESC on	The status of the stability control system after you switched it on.
Turn off traction control to aid in getting unstuck?	You can switch off traction control on the steering wheel to allow the wheels to spin. If you switched traction control off, the system turns on when your vehicle speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Mute the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: *Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.*

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

Press the parking aid button and use the menu to set the system on mute.

The system can also be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and can not be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS

The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS

The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. To reset the steering wheel angle information, drive straight for at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, the system detects obstacles within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS

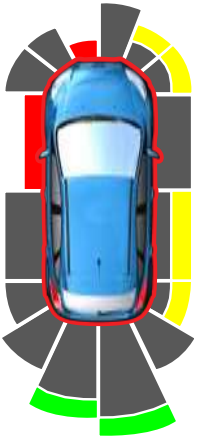
The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Details
Parking aid malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Message	Details
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

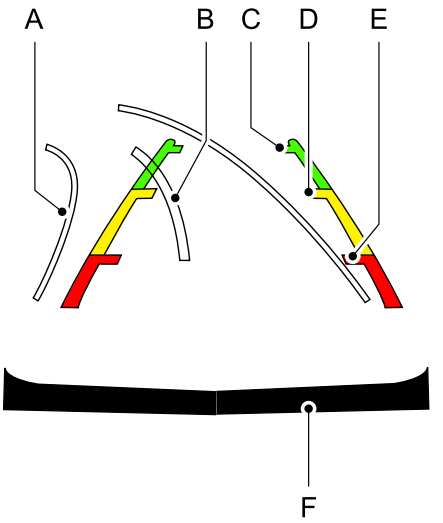
E249202

The rear view camera is on the liftgate.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: *Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



A	Active guide lines.
B	Centerline.
C	Fixed guide line: Green zone.
D	Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
E	Fixed guide line: Red zone.
F	Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT

WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

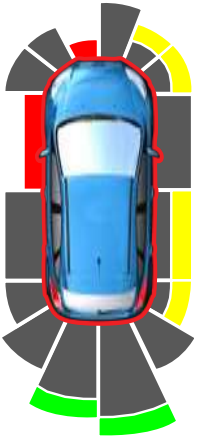
This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.*

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Rear View Camera Delay*** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA

The 180 degree camera provides an extended image of the area behind your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

When you switch the 180 degree view on, the view splits into three images. You can use the right and left outer images when reversing to check for cross traffic and pedestrians.

When you use the 180 degree camera view, objects behind your vehicle are shown extremely stretched and do not appear as actual ratio.

180 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects.*

Note: *Guide lines do not appear when you switch the 180 degree view on.*

SWITCHING THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

When you shift to reverse (R) and the rear view camera image appears, press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen to switch the 180 degree view on. Press the button again to switch it off.

The 180 degree view turns off when you shift into park (P) or into any forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.

Note: *Whenever you shift to reverse (R) the standard rear view camera image with guidelines is the default view.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Automatic Camera View Change (If Equipped)

When you shift to reverse (R) and the system detects an approaching vehicle, it automatically activates the 180 degree camera view.

When the intended path is free of cross traffic, the camera automatically switches back to the view before.

Press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen during a cross traffic event to temporarily switch the automatic camera view change off.

Note: *When you shift to reverse (R) again the automatic camera view change is reactivated.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Press the parking aid button on the instrument panel, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, shift out of neutral (N).

Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause parking assistance at any time, release the parking aid button.

To resume parking, press and hold the parking aid button again.

If you brake to standstill or open the passenger or rear doors, active park assist also pauses.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Press the parking aid button on the instrument panel, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel active park assist at any time, turn the steering wheel or press the active park assist button.

Note: *It also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 9 km/h (6 mph).*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

Note: *This could cause the active park assist to cancel.*

Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause active park assist at any time, brake to standstill. To resume parking, accelerate the vehicle again.

ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the parking button.

Note: *The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.*

4. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
7. Press and hold the parking button.
8. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to park.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *When parallel parking between objects, the system parks closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to the luggage compartment.*

Note: *When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).*

ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the parking aid button.

Note: *The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
4. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

5. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
7. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

8. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: *When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.*

ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the parking button.

Note: *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select perpendicular parking.
4. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

Note: *If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.*

5. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a parking space.*

6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
8. Press and hold the parking button.
9. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

Note: *Active park assist backs your vehicle into parking spaces.*

Note: *Active park assist aligns the front end of your vehicle with the lane side of the object next to it.*

Note: *When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).*

ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

1. Press the parking aid button.

Note: *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select perpendicular parking.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

4. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
5. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

6. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
8. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

9. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: *When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.*

Note: *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

Note: *When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.*

EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the parking button.
2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select parallel park exit.
4. Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the parking brake.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
8. Press and hold the parking button.
9. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to move.

Note: *After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

10. Take control of your vehicle.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

EXITING A PARKING SPACE - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the parking aid button.
2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select parallel park exit.
4. Use the turn signal lever to choose the direction to leave.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Follow the instructions on the information display.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Note: *After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Active Park malfunction	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

- The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

- You have switched traction control off.
- The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

- The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
- The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
- There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
- There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
- The parking space is more than 1.5 m (1.6 yd) or less than 0.5 m (0.5 yd) away from your vehicle.
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h (21.7 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (18.6 mph) for perpendicular parking.
- You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

- An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
- Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.
- Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
- The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
- A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
- The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
- The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.*

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

Press either the SET+ or SET- buttons to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator changes color in the information display.*

Changing the Set Speed

Press the SET+ button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET+ button to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Press the SET- button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the SET- button to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

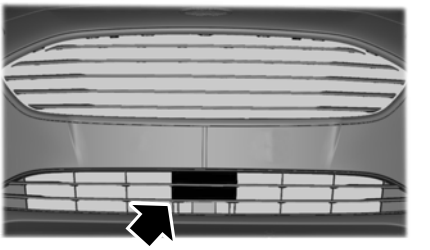
WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

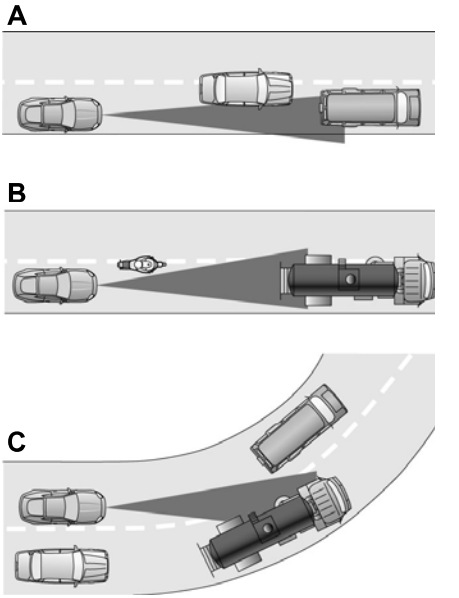
Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 263).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:



A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.

B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: *If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.*

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ SET- Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET- Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Drive to the required speed.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

E249552

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.*

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release ***SET+*** or ***SET-***.

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h (20 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET- Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

RES

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

CAN

Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Note: *The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES

Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED

WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL

WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Cruise Control***.
4. Press ***Normal***.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses radar and camera sensors to help keep your vehicle in the middle of the lane by applying continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center on highways.

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.*

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

Note: *If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 252).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go on.
- You have your hands on the steering wheel at all times.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- The vehicle is centered in the lane.

Note: *If it does not detect valid lane markings, the system stays inactive until valid markings are available.*

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 253).

Lane Centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- Limited steering torque input is applied.
- Areas under construction or new infrastructure.
- When modifications to the steering system have been made.
- When using a spare tire.
- In high wind conditions.

Note: *The driving assistance torque is limited and may not be sufficient for all driving situations such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line or could cancel.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Note: *The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See* ***Lane Centering Requirements*** *(page 261).*

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 262).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system slows the vehicle while maintaining steering control.

If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must contribute to the steering control and press and release the button or briefly press the accelerator pedal to regain full system performance.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings are crossed.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: *The system disables until the next key cycle if your vehicle slows down due to driver inactivity twice within a key cycle.*

You initiate a cancellation when the system is active and you switch the turn signal lamp on. The system immediately cancels. The system remains in standby mode as long as the turn signal lamp is engaged. The system automatically re-activates once the vehicle is centered in a lane and the turn signal lamp is switched off.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display when you switch lane centering on. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates the system is active and applying steering torque assistance input to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber with an audible tone and then gray indicates a system automatic cancellation.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Message	Details
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive cruise malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Norm. cruise act. Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Message	Action
Keep hands on steering wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering assist conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Resume control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings, for example steering, gear shifting, handling and powertrain response.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - EXCLUDING: ST

Press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

As a secondary option:

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***DRIVE MODES***.
3. Select a setting.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - ST

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***DRIVE MODES***.
3. Select a setting.

You can press the button on the steering wheel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

Press the button on the steering wheel to directly turn sport mode on and off.

DRIVE MODES

ECO

Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

NORMAL

Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: *This is the default mode each time you switch the ignition on.*

SLIPPERY

Vehicle settings suited for driving on slippery roads.

SPORT - EXCLUDING: ST

Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: *Auto-start-stop could switch off when you select this mode.*

SPORT - ST, MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: *Press the button on the steering wheel to directly select this mode.*

Note: *Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.*

SPORT - ST, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Press the button on the steering wheel to directly select this mode.*

Note: *Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.*

Note: *The seventh gear is disabled when you select this mode.*

TRACK - ST, MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Vehicle settings suited for track driving.

Note: *Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.*

Note: *Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Lane keeping system is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Track mode is not intended for use on public roads.*

Note: *Stability control is switched to reduced mode when you select this mode.*

TRACK - ST, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Vehicle settings suited for track driving.

Note: *Auto-start-stop switches off when you select this mode.*

Note: *Pre-collision assist is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Lane keeping system is disabled when you select this mode.*

Note: *Track mode is not intended for use on public roads.*

Note: *Stability control is switched to reduced mode when you select this mode.*

Note: *The seventh gear is disabled when you select this mode.*

TRAIL - ACTIVE

Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

Note: *Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.*

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Display Settings***.
4. Select ***Eco Coach***.
5. Select a setting and press the ***OK*** button.

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as four percentage values. The percentage values increase as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The percentage values indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

How to improve your efficiency:

- Acceleration: Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking: We recommend slow and steady braking.
- Speed: Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores.
- Gear shifting: Shifting the gears at the right moment improves your score.
- Compliance: Follow the recommendations to improve your score.

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a percentage value for gear shifting.*

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***MyView***.
3. Select ***Configure MyView***.
4. Select ***Eco Behaviour***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that uses the vehicle navigation data. It provides predictive route information to help you drive more efficiently by indicating when you can release the accelerator pedal.

HOW DOES EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE WORK

When you approach a speed limit or a road event, the symbol displays in the instrument cluster display with a second symbol indicating the type of event.

As soon as you take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle adjusts the brake energy recuperation and the speed. The vehicle takes into account the selected driving profile and the distance to the event.

The system does not use the vehicle brake. When you are driving downhill, the system also cannot sufficiently brake the vehicle in all driving situations.

Note: *When the system is active, Efficient Drive Mode can increase deceleration even without a displayed message, thereby adapting the speed to a detected vehicle ahead.*

Note: *You can override Efficient Drive Mode at any time by accelerating.*

Note: *: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See* ***Connected Vehicle Settings*** *(page 420). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Display Settings***.
4. Select ***Eco Coach***.
5. Switch ***Eco Advice*** on or off.

TRIP SUMMARY

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for your driving behavior, acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

Note: *The compliance score assesses how well you follow the efficient drive mode indicator.*

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.

The button is on the center console.

1. Select ***ECO***.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

3. Select ***Settings***.
4. Select ***Display Settings***.
5. Select ***Eco Coach***.
6. Switch ***Eco Advice*** on.
7. Switch the vehicle off.

EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS

It illuminates grey when the system recommends you to decelerate.

It changes color when you start to decelerate.

The additional display ring next to the efficient drive mode indicator can provide information about speed limit, intersection, freeway ramp, roundabout, stop sign, slope, curve or crosswalk.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION INDICATORS

Animals on the road.

Approaching vehicle coming the wrong way.

Broken down vehicle or accident.

Broken down vehicle or accident.

Fire.

General.

Hazardous driving conditions.

Objects on the road.

People on the road.

Road works.

Traffic jam.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all indicators shown are available.*

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: *Make sure that the modem is enabled. See* ***Enabling and Disabling the Modem*** *(page 419).*

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Press ***Connected Vehicle Features***.
4. Switch ***Local hazard information*** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Select ***Local Hazard Information***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

CAN

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES Press to resume the set speed limiter.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

RES The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, when you press the button or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See* ***Connected Vehicle Settings*** *(page 420). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+ SET- Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

Note: *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+ SET- You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

CAN Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

RES The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, when you press the button or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
4. Switch ***Intelligent Speed Limiter*** off.

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF

To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: *When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.*

Note: *The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.*

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Lane-Keeping System***.
4. Press ***Mode***.
5. Select a setting.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the two modes on the touchscreen:

- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

Note: *The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle.*

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Lane-Keeping System***.
4. Press ***Alert Intensity***.
5. Select a setting.

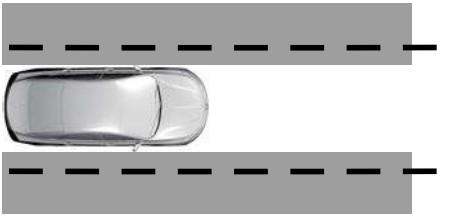
Note: *This setting does not affect the aid mode.*

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: *When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.*

Note: *The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.*

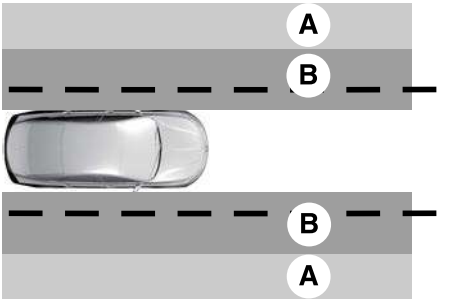
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Aid Mode and alert combines both, aid mode and steering wheel vibration alert.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.



A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: *The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on and aid mode or alert and aid mode are selected.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

When you switch the system on, a graphic of lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.

The lane markings illuminate white if the system is available.

The lane markings illuminate gray if the system is unavailable.

The lane markings do not display if the system is off. When you switch the system off, an amber indicator with a strikethrough appears.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

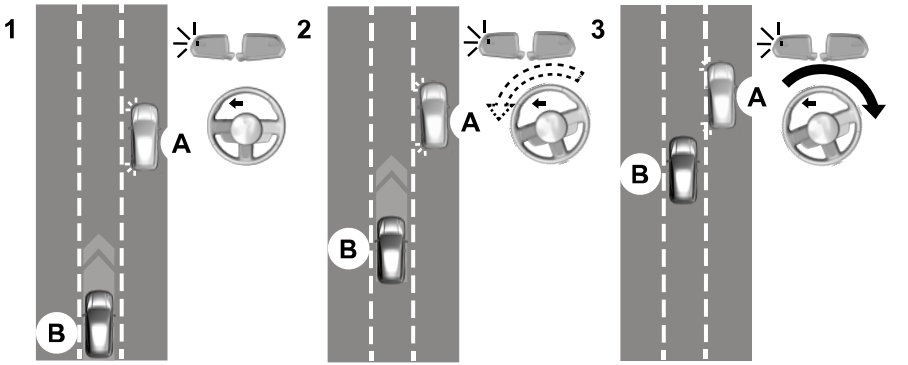


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 285).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: *When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See* ***Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage*** *(page 287).*

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 287).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 287).

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS

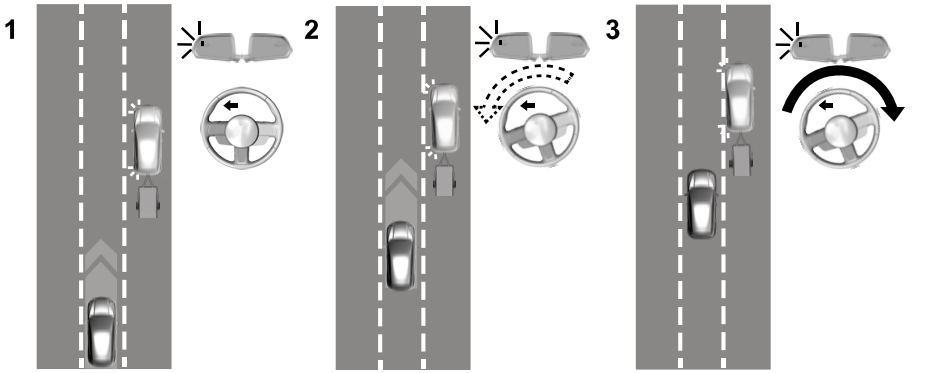


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 285).

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 287).
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

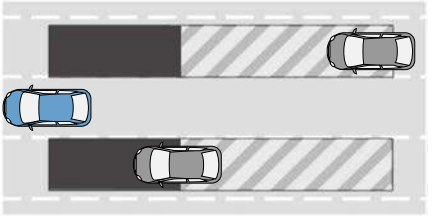
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

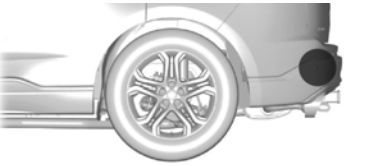
1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Blind Spot Information System*** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

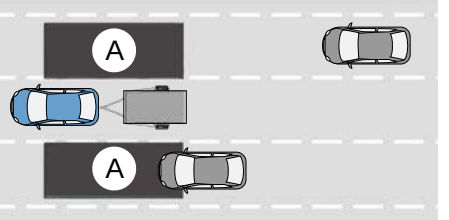
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

Note: *The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

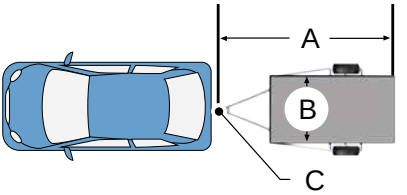
Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



A Trailer length.

B Trailer width.

C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Towing***.
3. Press ***Add trailer*** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press ***Trailer BLIS*** and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: *Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.*

Note: *If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.*

SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Towing***.
3. Press ***Select Active Trailer***.
4. Select an available trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.*

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

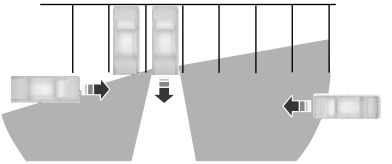
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

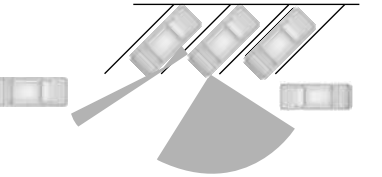
HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start your vehicle and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

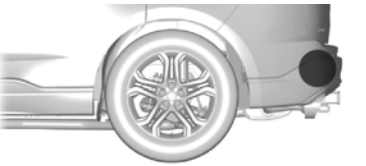
Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Cross Traffic Alert*** on or off.

Note: *The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.*

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the center display.

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS

When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: *If the arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – WARNING LAMPS

If the system malfunctions, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.
Applying brakes	

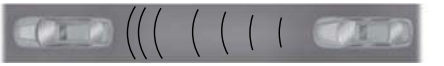
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



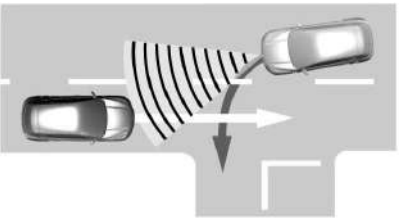
If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning lamp flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking - vehicles without adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash. The system is active at speeds up to 130 km/h (80 mph).
Automatic emergency braking - vehicles with adaptive cruise control	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system could apply brakes if you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph).



PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

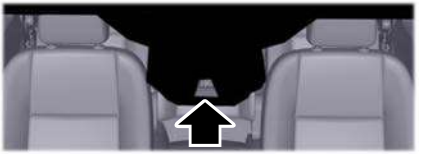
PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The system is not designed to detect vehicles that are traveling in a different direction.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

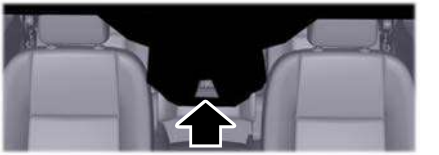
Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

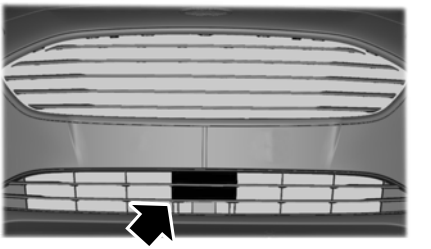
Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
4. Switch ***Distance Indication*** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft) .	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6-0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
4. Press ***Alert Sensitivity***.
5. Select a setting.

DISTANCE ALERT

WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

A warning lamp illuminates if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

Note: *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
4. Press ***Alert Sensitivity***.
5. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.
4. Switch ***Automatic Emergency Braking*** on or off.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.*

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: *Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See* ***Pre-Collision Assist Precautions*** *(page 295).*

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.*

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Pre-Collision Assist***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

4. Switch ***Evasive Steering Assist*** on or off.

Note: *Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

It illuminates when the system is not available.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: *No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See* ***Pre-Collision Assist Precautions*** *(page 295).*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

The following table lists possible causes and actions for when a blocked sensor message could display.

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit.

HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See* ***Connected Vehicle Settings*** *(page 420). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS

When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the instrument cluster display.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
4. Switch ***Speed Warning*** on or off.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Driver Alert*** on or off.

Note: *The system turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.*

RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS

When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See* ***Connected Vehicle Settings*** *(page 420). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.

When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.

When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
4. Switch ***Speed Warning*** on or off.

LIM Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: *The speed warning turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.*

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Press ***Speed Limit Assist***.
4. Switch ***Chime for Speed Limit Change*** on or off.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See* ***Connected Vehicle Settings*** *(page 420). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.*

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Driver Assistance***.
3. Switch ***Wrong Way Alert*** on or off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - 4-DOOR/5-DOOR, VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for roof racks. Never install a roof rack to your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - 4-DOOR/5-DOOR/WAGON, VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport or Track mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS - WAGON, VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport or Track mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Make sure the moonroof is closed before fitting the cross bars and it remains closed.

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

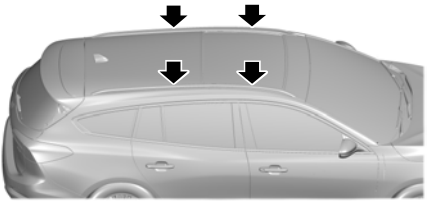
Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REMOVING AND INSTALLING ROOF RACK CROSSBARS



E282695

Fix the cross bars on the rail markings.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - 4-DOOR/5-DOOR/WAGON, VEHICLES WITHOUT: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 75 kg (165 lb).

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - WAGON, VEHICLES WITH: PANORAMIC ROOF OPENING PANEL

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack is 75 kg (165 lb).

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES - 5-DOOR

Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 322).

Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.

If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 60 kg (130 lb).

Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES - WAGON

Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. This is the weight of the carrier plus the weight of the load. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 323).

Pay attention to the carrier manufacturer's specifications.

If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum number of allowed bikes is three, with a maximum allowed weight of 60 kg (130 lb).

Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: *When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

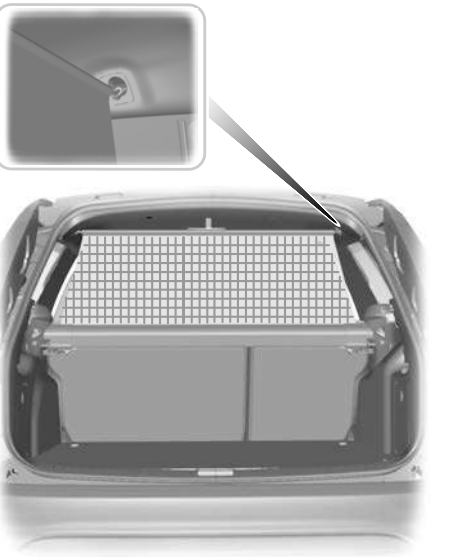
INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT CARGO NET

Luggage retention net anchor points are fitted behind the second row seats.

To install the luggage retention net cassette:

1. Remove the luggage cover.
2. Push the sliders on the cassette toward each other and insert the telescopic bar into the holes on the sidewall behind the rear seat backrests.

Note: *Make sure that the end caps with the anti-rotation pin are correctly fitted in the side trim.*



E78834

3. Pull up the net and insert the ends of the bar into the retainers on the roof.

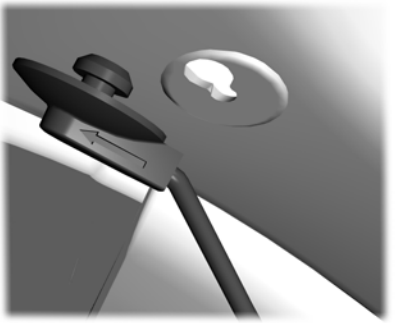
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Make sure that the bar is pushed forward into the narrow section of the retainers.*

4. Reinstall the luggage cover.

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER - 5-DOOR

To remove the luggage cover:



E266421

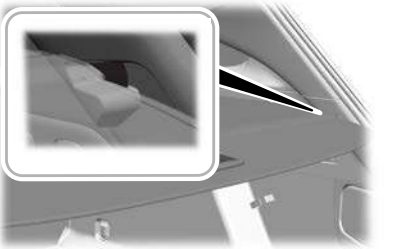
1. Gently push the retaining clip up and remove it.
2. Raise the luggage cover.
3. Pull the luggage cover backward.

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER - WAGON

Opening the Luggage Cover

E267491

1. Fully pull the luggage cover out.

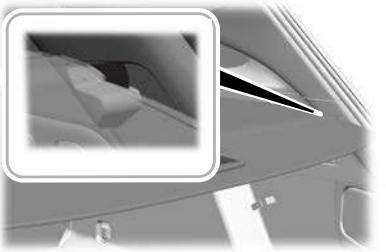


E267490

2. Securely place the retaining pins in the trim panels on both sides.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Closing the Luggage Cover

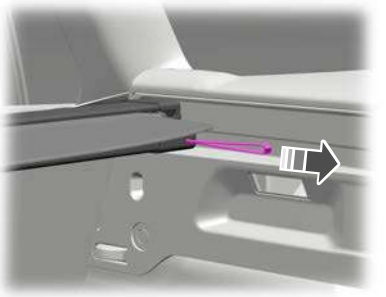


E267490

1. Slightly pull the luggage cover backward to release the retaining pins from the trim panels on both sides.
2. Slowly roll the luggage cover into the casing.

Removing the Luggage Cover

1. Fully close the luggage cover.



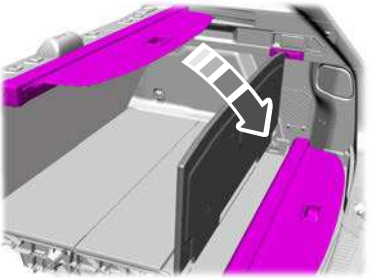
E267492

2. Pull the strap toward the rear of your vehicle.

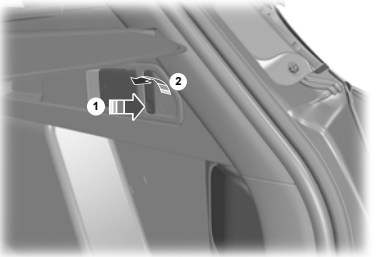
Note: *Support the center of the luggage cover when you pull the strap.*

Stowing the Luggage Cover

You can stow the luggage cover under the loadspace floor.



LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT HOOK - WAGON



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

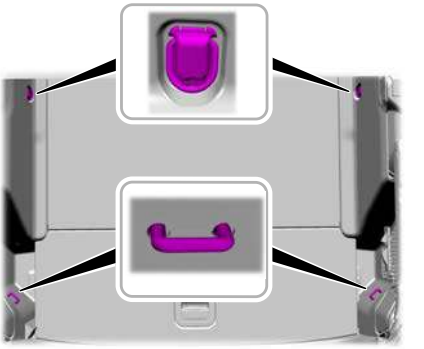
LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS - 5-DOOR

E132901

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS - WAGON



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: DETACHABLE TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

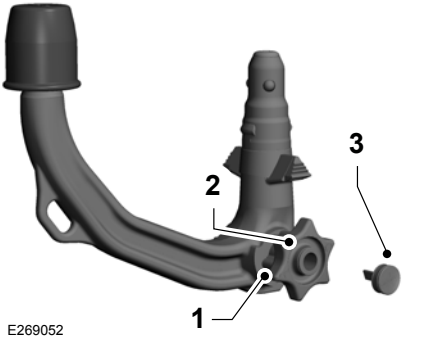
Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

Do not use any tools to detach or attach the tow ball arm.

Note: *You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked.*

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you attach the tow ball arm, check the following:



1. The green mark on the handwheel is within the green line on the tow ball arm.
2. You have locked the handwheel.
3. You have removed the key.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

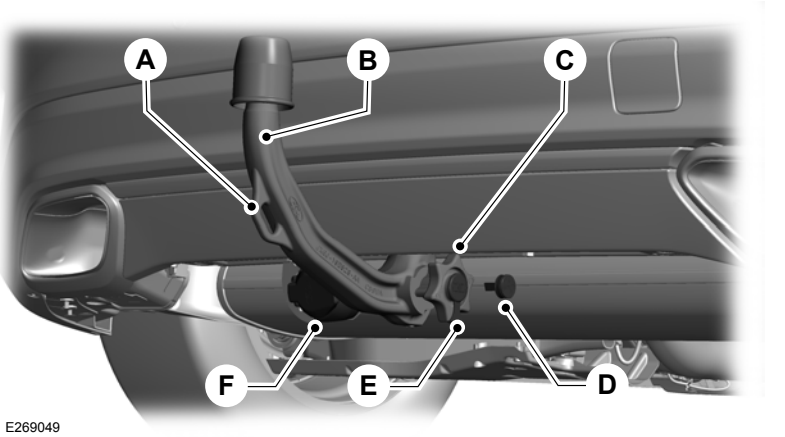
TOW BALL ARM GUIDELINES

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil. Lubricate the lock with graphite.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Regularly clean the trailer wiring connection socket and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

TOW BALL COMPONENTS



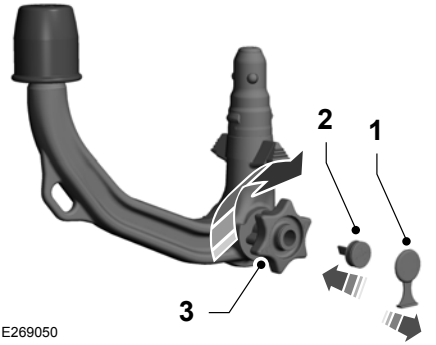
E269049

A Trailer safety cable attachment point.
B Tow ball arm in tow position.
C Handwheel.
D Key.
E Protective cap.
F Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

DETACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

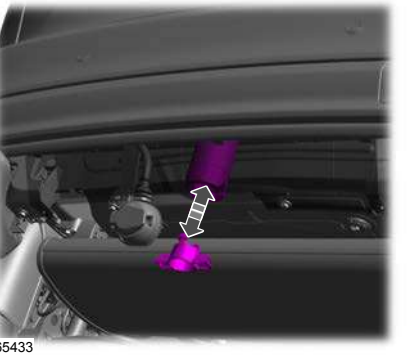


E269050

1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel outward and turn it fully clockwise until it clicks.

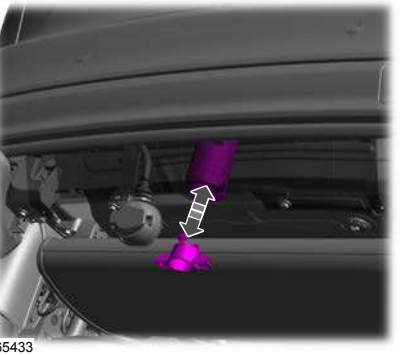
Note: *The red mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.*

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.


E265433

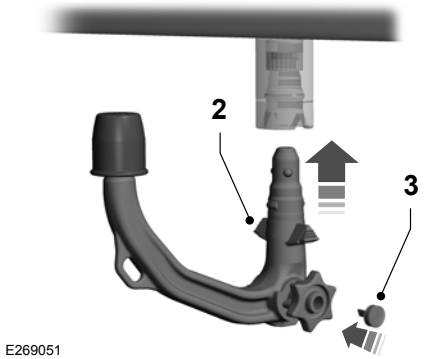
7. Insert the blanking plug.

ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM


E265433

1. Remove the blanking plug.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

Note: *The green mark on the handwheel must be within the green line on the tow ball arm.*

3. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to lock the handwheel.
4. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
5. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Recognizing a Trailer

Make sure to connect the trailer to your vehicle with a proper fitting connector that supports your vehicle and the trailer functions.

1. Attach the trailer and wiring connector to your vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on.
3. Set up a profile for the trailer using the touchscreen.

Note: *If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.*

Managing Trailer Profiles

1. Press ***Features*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Towing***.

You can perform multiple actions from this menu.

See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 287).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS - 4-DOOR

WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS - 5-DOOR/ WAGON

WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS - 5-DOOR/ WAGON

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 417).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

LOADING YOUR TRAILER - 5-DOOR/WAGON

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 322). See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 323).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

TRAILER TOWING HINTS - 5-DOOR/WAGON

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - 5-DOOR

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Engine	Transmission	kg (lb)
1.0L EcoBoost.	Manual transmission.	90 (198)
1.0L EcoBoost.	Automatic transmission.	75 (165)
1.5L EcoBlue.	Manual transmission.	90 (198)
1.5L EcoBlue.	Automatic transmission.	60 (132)
1.5L TiVCT.	All.	90 (198)
2.0L EcoBlue.	All.	90 (198)
2.3L EcoBoost.	All.	90 (198)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

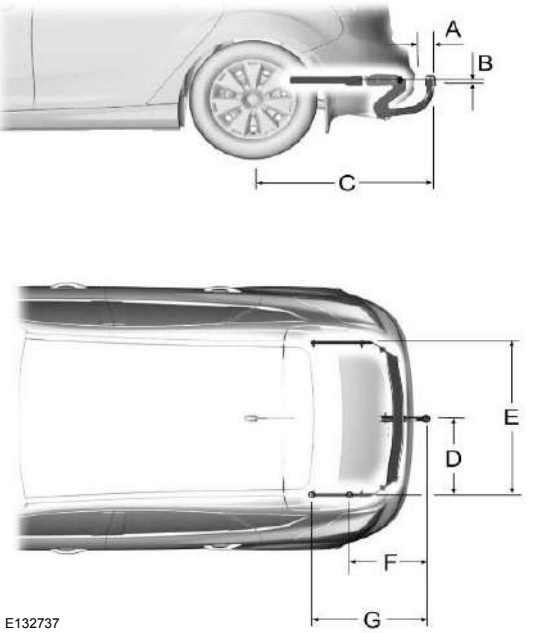
TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - WAGON

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Engine	Transmission	kg (lb)
1.0L EcoBoost.	All.	90 (198)
1.5L EcoBlue.	Manual transmission.	80 (176)
1.5L EcoBlue.	Automatic transmission.	90 (198)
1.5L TiVCT.	All.	90 (198)
2.0L EcoBlue.	All.	90 (198)
2.3L EcoBoost.	All.	90 (198)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

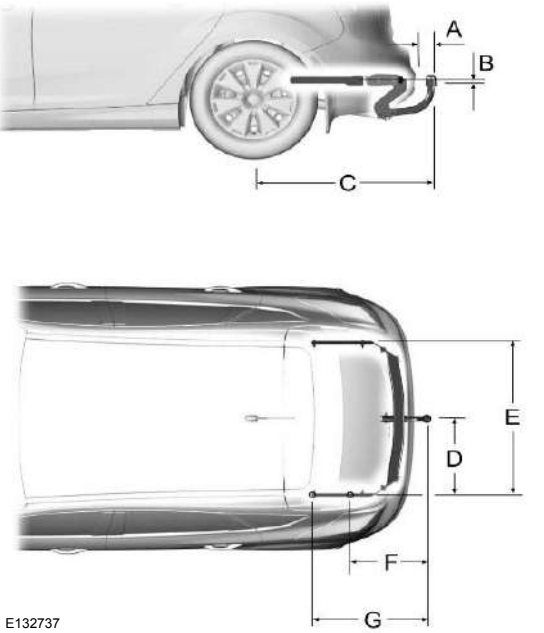
TOW BAR DIMENSIONS - 5-DOOR



Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	102 (4.0)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	8 (0.3)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	869 (34.2)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	525 (20.7)
E	Distance between side members.	1,047 (41.2)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	329 (13.0)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	569 (22.4)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS - WAGON



Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	87 (3.4)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	8 (0.3)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,145 (45.1)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	525 (20.7)
E	Distance between side members.	1,047 (41.2)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	382 (15.0)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	622 (24.5)

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25ºC (-13ºF).

BREAKING-IN

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER

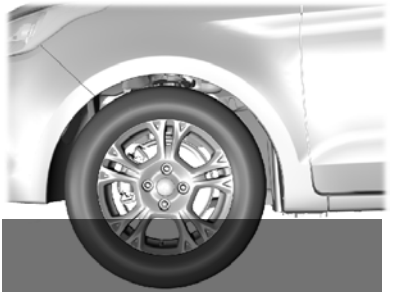
WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

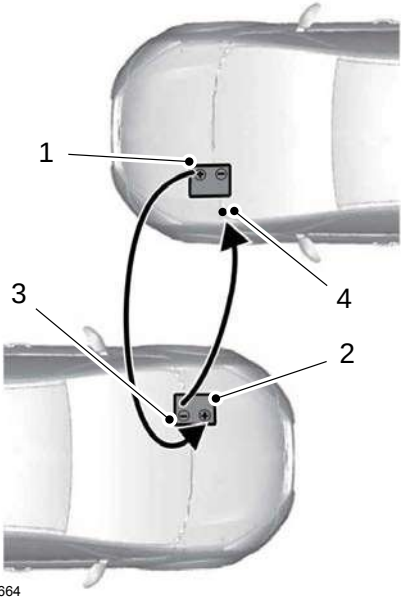
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



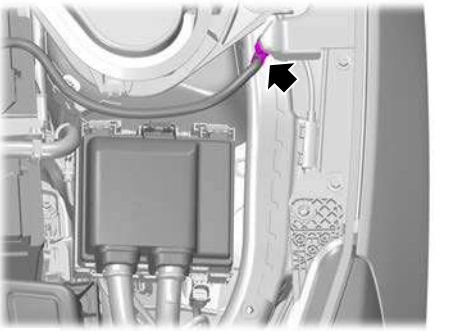
E142664

Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.

1. Connect the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the assisting battery.

WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Make the final connection of the negative jumper cable to the ground point.



5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and press the accelerator gently to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
7. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: *Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.*

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (5 mph).

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators

It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RECOVERY TOWING

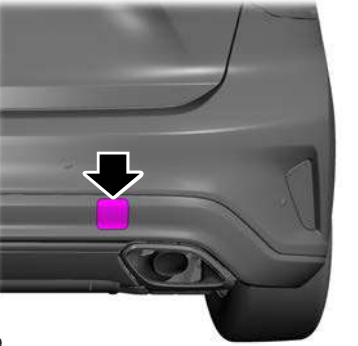
ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT

E265228

1. Gently press and release the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.
2. Gently pull it straight out.

Note: *The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.*

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT

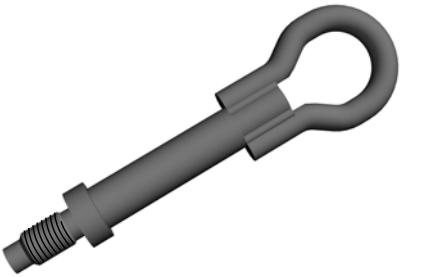


E265229

1. Gently press the top of the towing eye attachment point cover inward.
2. Gently lift it upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: *The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.*

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the spare wheel storage tray.

Note: *You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE

WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

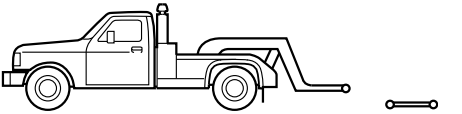
WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.

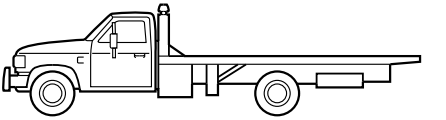
E265230

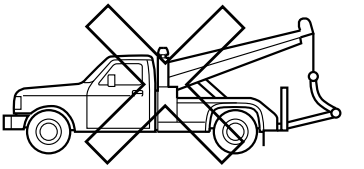
1. The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.
2. Install the towing eye.

Note: *It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.*

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the mechanical systems and vehicle.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the front, place the rear wheels on a tow dolly.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the rear, place the front wheels on a tow dolly.

FAIL-SAFE COOLING

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED

WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: *Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle backward.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).*

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

STORING A FIRST AID KIT

You can store the first aid kit in the luggage compartment.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE

You can store the warning triangle in the luggage compartment.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

FUSE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

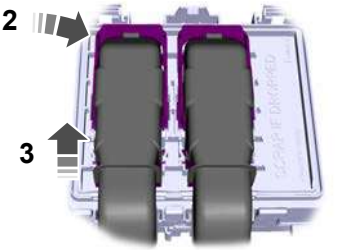
UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

E265225

ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

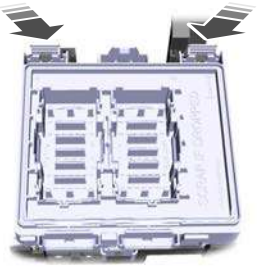
1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



E253689

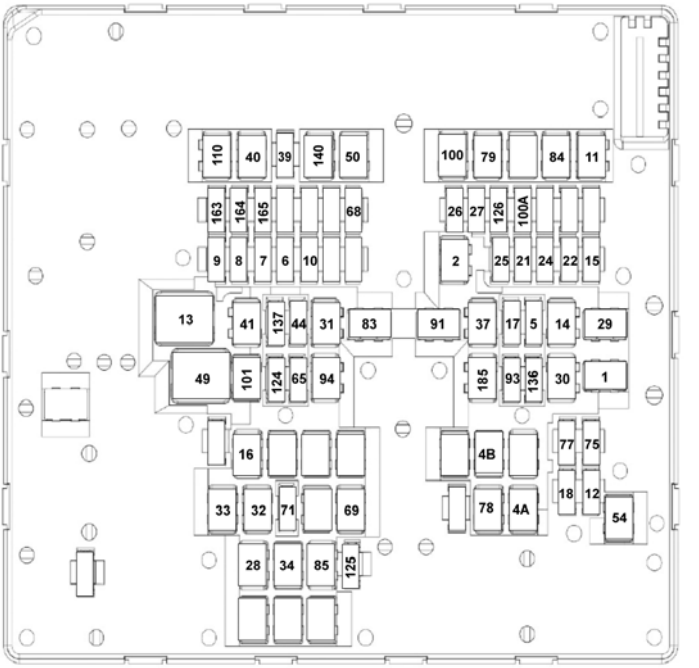
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
4A	20 A	Fuel pump - diesel.
4B	20 A	Fuel pump - gasoline.
5	10 A	Data link connector.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
	15 A	Powertrain control module.
7	10 A	Powertrain control module.
8	15 A	Powertrain control module.
9	20 A	Powertrain control module.
10	10 A	Powertrain control module.
11	30 A	Starter motor.
12	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
14	20 A	Auxiliary heater control module.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	20 A	Rear window washer pump.
17	5 A	Lumbar assembly.
18	20 A	Headlamp washer pump.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
22	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module.
25	10 A	Rear view camera. Blind spot information system. Reverse gear. Cruise control.
26	15 A	Transmission control module - diesel.
	10 A	Transmission control module - mHEV.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Item	Rating	Protected Component
27	10 A	Electronic stability control.
28	40 A	Electronic stability control valve.
29	60 A	Electronic stability control pump.
30	25 A	Driver power seat.
31	25 A	Passenger power seat.
32	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
33	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
34	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
37	20 A	Moonroof.
39	15 A	Transmission module power.
40	60 A	Transmission module power.
41	30 A	Power liftgate. Luggage compartment.
44	10 A	Stoplamp switch.
49	60 A	Cooling fan.
50	30 A	Heated back light.
54	20 A	Electronic limited slip differential - gasoline.
65	20 A	Transmission control module - diesel.
	5 A	Battery electronic control module - gasoline.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wipers.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper.
75	10 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor - gasoline.
77	10 A	Heated front washer.
78	40 A	Left-hand heated windshield element.
79	40 A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
83	40 A	Auxiliary heater.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Item	Rating	Protected Component
84	60 A	Auxiliary heater.
85	40 A	Auxiliary heater.
91	40 A	Trailer tow module.
93	5 A	Headlamps.
94	20 A	Heated seats.
100A	5 A	Headlamp control module.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamp assembly power.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamp assembly power.
110	30 A	Water-in-fuel sensor - diesel. Diesel fuel heater.
124	5 A	Rain sensor.
125	5 A	USB port.
126	5 A	Dosing control unit - diesel.
136	15 A	Amplifier.
137	15 A	Amplifier.
140	60 A	Glow plugs - diesel.
163	15 A	Dosing control unit pressure line heater.
164	10 A	Reductant dosage control module.
165	15 A	Tank heater - diesel.
185	20 A	Power windows. Moonroof.

INTERIOR FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse box is below the glove compartment.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box - 5-Door and Wagon

E267033

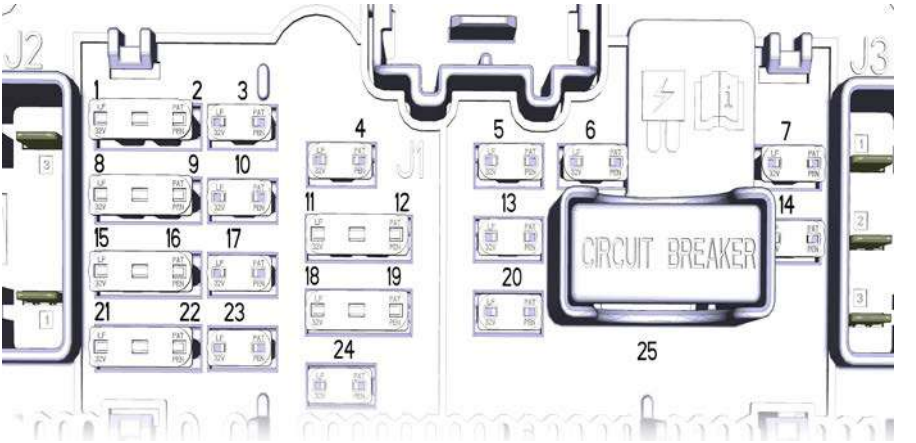
The fuse box is in the luggage compartment on the right-hand side.

ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

1. Fold back the carpet under the glove compartment.
2. Carefully remove the cover.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E249945

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
3	10 A	Parking assist control module.
4	10 A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
5	20 A	Central locking system.
6	10 A	Moonroof.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Not used (spare).
9	5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Auto-dimming interior mirror. Front camera.
10	10 A	Head up display module. Wireless accessory charging module.
11	5 A	Telematics modem.
12	5 A	Combined intrustion and inclination sensor.
13	15 A	Fuel filler door release switch. Double lock. Child lock. Relay feed.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
16	15 A	Adaptive damping module.
17	15 A	Integrated control panel. SYNC 3 module. SYNC 4 module. Display module.
18	7.5 A	Power liftgate module. Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
19	7.5 A	Battery back-up sounder. Fuel fired booster heater.

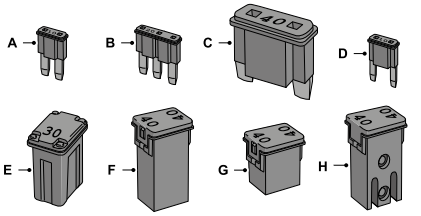
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
20	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Steering wheel module. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Not used (spare).

Trailer Tow Module Fuse Box - 5-Door and Wagon

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	15 A	Ignition system.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A	Micro 2.
B	Micro 3.
C	Maxi.
D	Mini.
E	M Case.
F	J Case.
G	J Case Low Profile.
H	Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

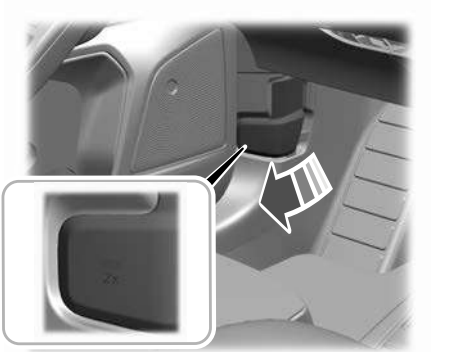
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 404).

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD - LHD

Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

Note: *This action releases the hood latch.*

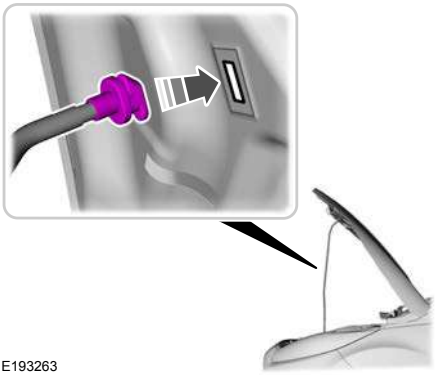
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

Note: *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

Note: *There is no secondary latch under the hood.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing


E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

Warning Lamps and Indicators

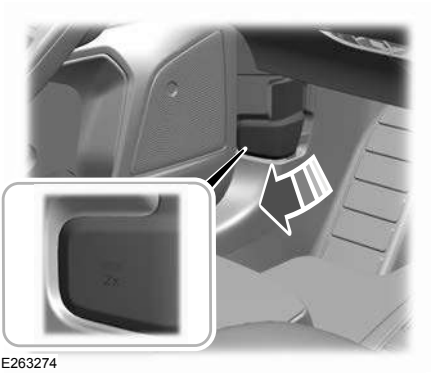
It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Information Messages

Message	Details
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD - RHD

Opening the Hood


E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

Note: *This action releases the hood latch.*

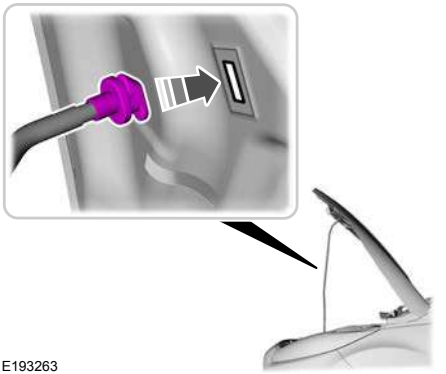
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

Note: *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

Note: *There is no secondary latch under the hood.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



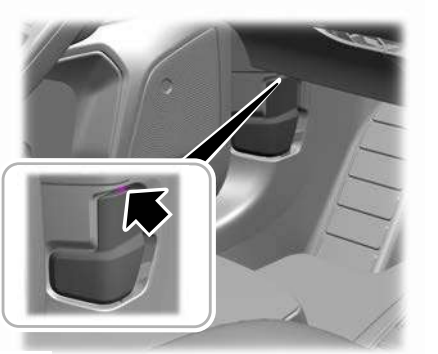
E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Note: *Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.*

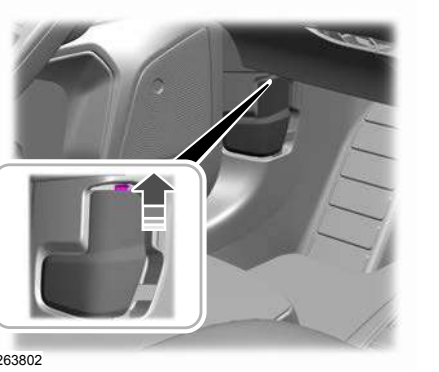
Opening the Hood if the Passenger Door cannot be Opened

1. Unlock the right-hand front door using the key and access the left-hand front footwell. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 55).



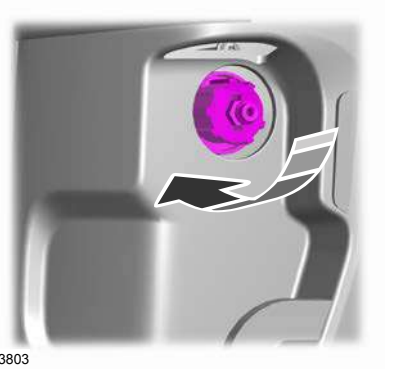
E263801

2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown.



E263802

3. Gently pry the hood release lever securing clip upward.



E263803

4. Use a suitable tool, for example a hexagonal socket, and turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Let the hood release mechanism completely retract.

Note: *This action releases the hood latch.*

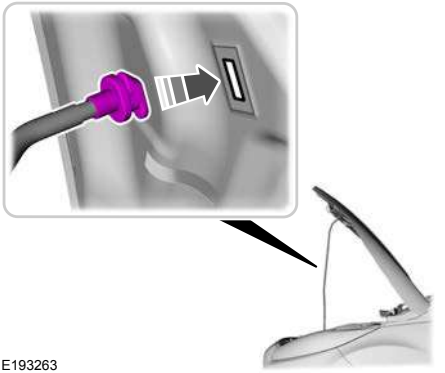
6. Turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance for a second time.

Note: *This action fully releases the hood.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

7. Open the hood.

Note: *There is no secondary latch under the hood.*



E193263

8. Support the hood with the strut.

Note: *Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.*

9. Reinstall the hood release lever. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure the hood release lever securing clip is fully engaged.*

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

Warning Lamps and Indicators

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

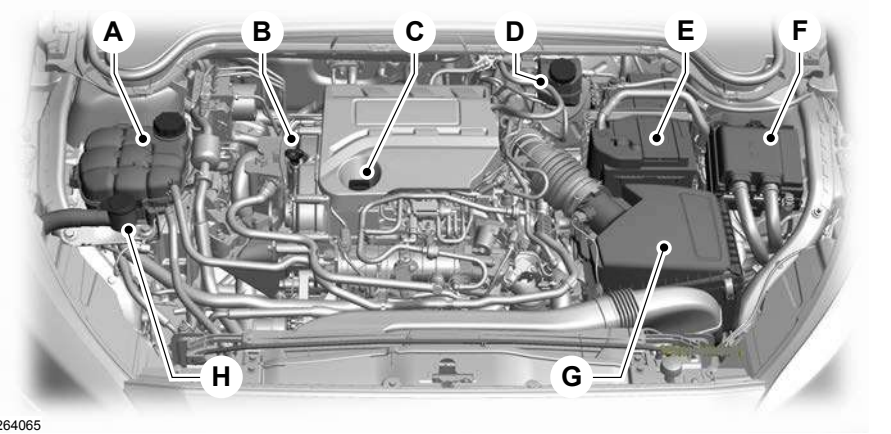
Information Messages

Message	Details
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, LHD

Note: *Your vehicle may not include an engine cover.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



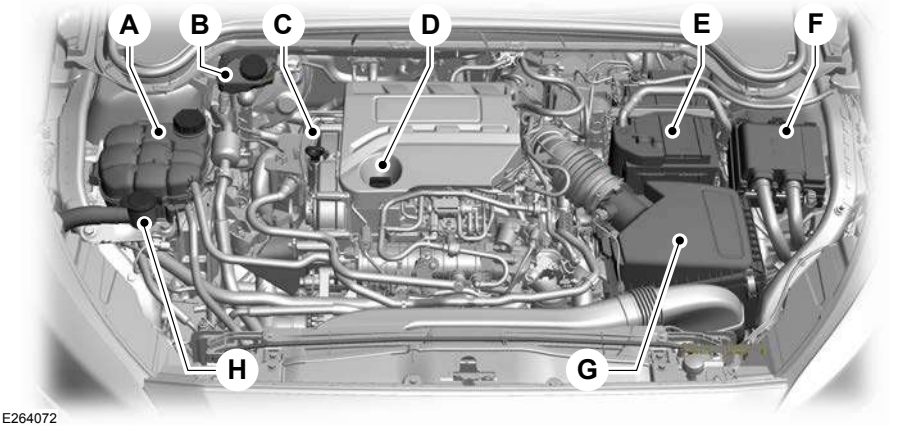
E264065

A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).
B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 357).
C Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 358).
D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 217).
E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 363).
F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 339).
G Air filter assembly.
H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, RHD

Note: *Your vehicle may not include an engine cover.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).

B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 217).

C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 357).

D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 358).

E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 363).

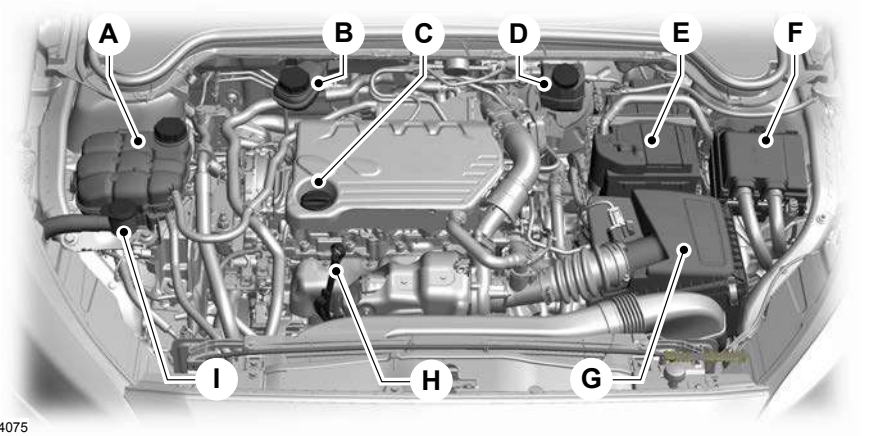
F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 339).

G Air filter assembly.

H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE, LHD



E264075

A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).

B Engine cooling system overflow reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).

C Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 357).

D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 217).

E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 363).

F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 339).

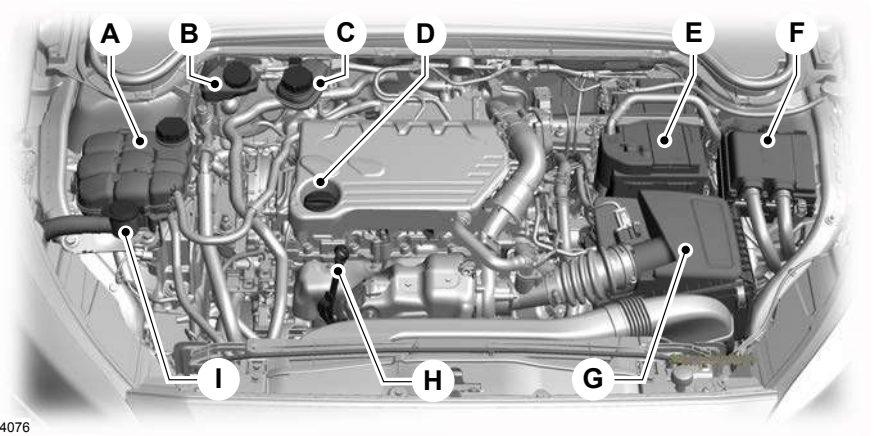
G Air filter.

H Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 357).

I Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE, RHD



E264076

A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).

B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 217).

C Engine cooling system overflow reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).

D Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 357).

E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 363).

F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 339).

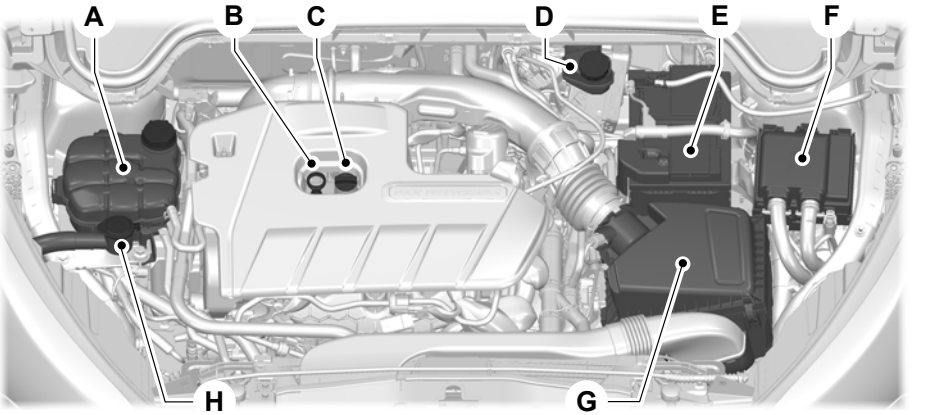
G Air filter.

H Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 357).

I Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™, LHD



E294376

A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).

B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 357).

C Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 357).

D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 217).

E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 363).

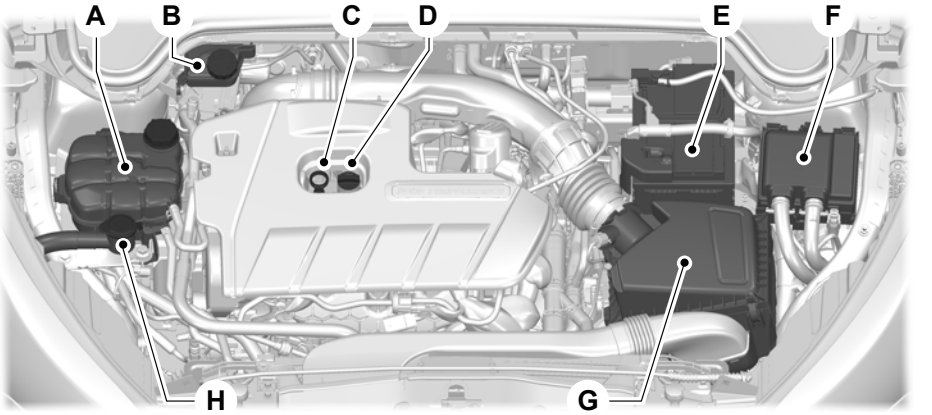
F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 339).

G Air filter.

H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™, RHD



E294377

A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).

B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 217).

C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 357).

D Engine oil filler cap. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 357).

E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 363).

F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 339).

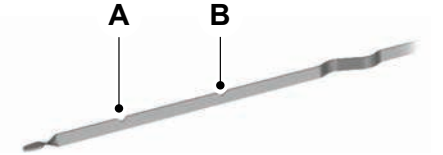
G Air filter.

H Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 82).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ENGINE OIL

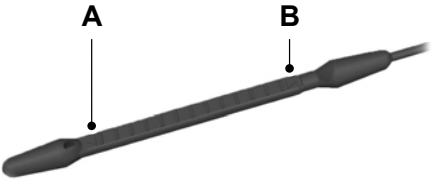
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



A Minimum.

B Maximum.

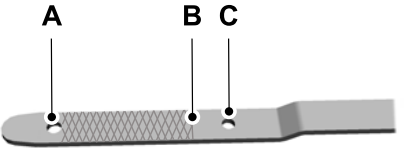
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBLUE



A Minimum.

B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



A Minimum.

B Nominal.

C Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: *Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.*

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).*

Note: *Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.*

Note: *If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

ADDING ENGINE OIL

WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 404).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.*

INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Under certain conditions the vehicle's intelligent oil life monitor may determine that your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 800 km (500 mi) of being alerted.

Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil Filter.

Checking the Current State of Oil Life

You can check the current state of oil life in percentage.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Vehicle Maintenance***.
3. Select ***Oil Life***.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/2.3L ECOBOOST™

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Vehicle Maintenance***.
3. Select ***Oil Life***.
4. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ENGINE COOLING FAN - GASOLINE

WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL

WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in all ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 192).

COOLANT

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34ºC (-29ºF) and -37ºC (-35ºF). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT

WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 404). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 404). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 404).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 334).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Engine coolant overtemperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 359).
Stop safely now	

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 347).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 101).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Message	Details
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 329). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs do not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front turn signal lamp.	LED.	-
Daytime running lamp.	LED.	-
Headlamp low beam.	LED.	-
Headlamp high beam.	LED.	-

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front fog lamp.	LED.	-
Mirror turn signal lamp.	LED.	-
Rear lamp.[1]	W5W	5
Stoplamp.[2]	P21W	21
Stoplamp.[3]	W16W	16
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
Rear turn signal lamp.[2]	PY21W	21
Rear turn signal lamp.[3]	WY16W	16
Rear fog lamp.	LED.	-
Reversing lamp.	LED.	-
License plate lamp.	LED.	-

[1] Rear lamps are also available as LED lamps.
[2] Halogen rear lamps.
[3] LED rear lamps.
Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

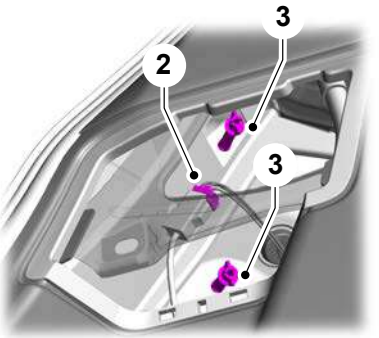
REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY - 5-DOOR/WAGON

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Stoplamp, Rear Lamp and Rear Turn Signal Lamp

E264497

1. Carefully remove the luggage compartment trim panel.

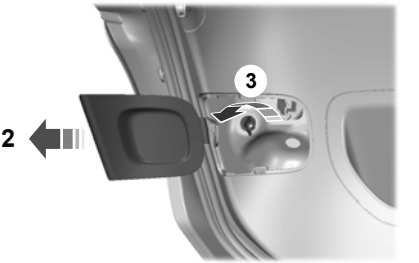


E264498

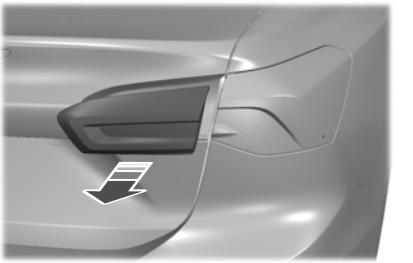
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the wing nuts that secure the lamp assembly.
4. Remove the lamp.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Reversing Lamp and Rear Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.



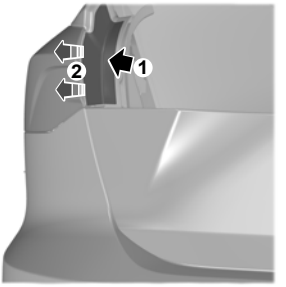
4. Remove the lamp.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

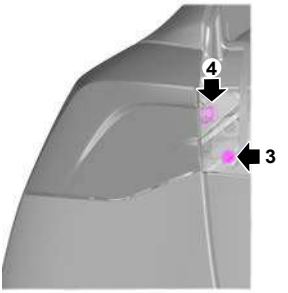
REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY - 4-DOOR

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Stoplamp, Rear Lamp and Rear Turn Signal Lamp



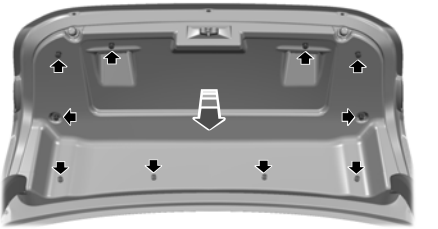
1. Press the panel as indicated.
2. Carefully remove the panel.



3. Remove the bolt that secures the lamp assembly.
4. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Reversing Lamp and Rear Lamp

1. Open the liftgate.



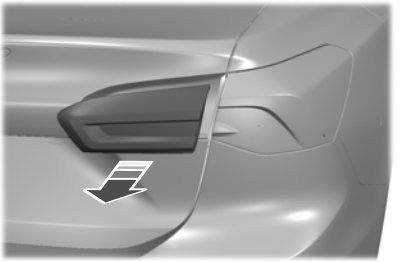
2. Firmly pull the soft trim panel at the ten fixing points to unclip the soft trim panel.

Note: *Use a screwdriver to gently lift the panel.*

3. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.



5. Remove the lamp.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

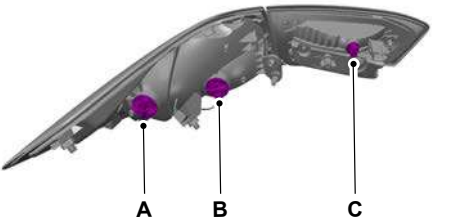
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 366).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 368). See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 369).

Note: *Rear lamps are also available as LED lamps.*

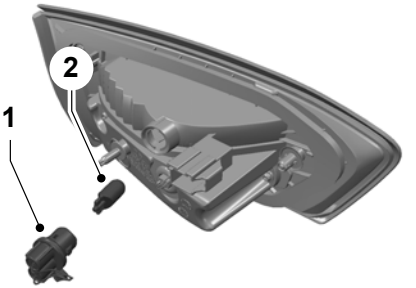
Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



A	Stoplamp.
B	Rear turn signal lamp.
C	Rear lamp.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Replacing a Rear Lamp Bulb



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB

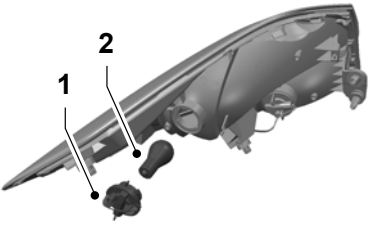
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 366).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 368). See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 369).

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

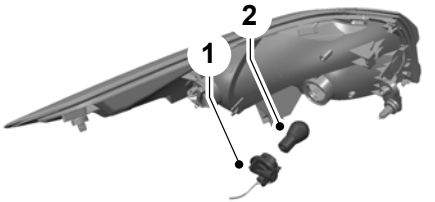
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 366).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 368). See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 369).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TRACK USE PRECAUTIONS

Before using your vehicle on a track, check the engine oil level. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 357).

Maintain the engine oil level at or near the maximum mark on the engine oil dipstick when using your vehicle on a track.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS LAUNCH CONTROL

Launch control is an electronic driving aid that helps to deliver a fast acceleration when you pull away from a standstill.

LAUNCH CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

Make sure that there are no pedestrians, objects or traffic in front of your vehicle.

LAUNCH CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Launch control does not operate when the transmission is in reverse or if the engine has not reached normal operating temperature.

SWITCHING LAUNCH CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select ***Settings***.
3. Switch ***Launch Control*** on or off.

Note: *The system remains on until you switch it off or you switch the ignition off.*

USING LAUNCH CONTROL

1. Bring your vehicle to a stop with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
2. Switch ***Launch control*** on. See **Switching Launch Control On and Off** (page 374).
3. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into first gear.
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The system brings the engine to the optimum speed.*

5. Quickly and fully release the clutch pedal in a single movement.

LAUNCH CONTROL INDICATORS

Illuminates in the information bar when you switch the system on.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: *Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.*

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40º wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90º angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23ºC (73ºF).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

CLEANING FABRIC

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

Note: *The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7ºC (45ºF) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 383). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 385). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 386).

USING SNOW CHAINS - EXCLUDING: ACTIVE/ST

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 205/60R16.
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 8 mm (0.3 in) for five spoke steel wheels.

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 383).

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off.

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

USING SNOW CHAINS - ACTIVE

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 215/55R17.
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 385).

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off.

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

USING SNOW CHAINS - ST

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 215/50R17.
  - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 386).

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Switching Stability Control On and Off** (page 231).

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

USING SNOW TRACTION DEVICES - ST

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Do not use snow traction device on snow free roads.*

Note: *Only fit snow traction device to specified tires.*

Only use snow traction device on the front wheels.

Only use snow sock on the following specified tire sizes:

- 235/35R19.

Note: *Using snow chains on this tire size can damage the wheel house and the body.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a snow sock.*

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 383).

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 228).

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 383).

INFLATING THE TIRES

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

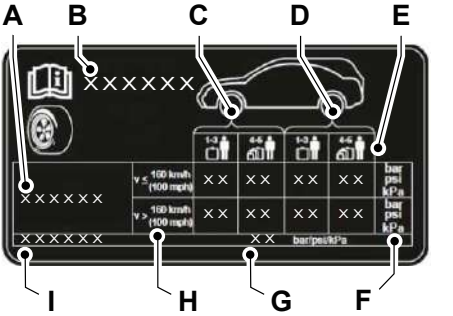
Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - EXCLUDING: ACTIVE/ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.*



E254054

A	Tire size.
B	Vehicle model.
C	Front tire pressure.
D	Rear tire pressure.
E	Vehicle load.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

F Measure unit.
G Spare wheel tire pressure.
H Intended constant vehicle speed.
I Spare wheel tire size.

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
205/60R16	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3.1 (45)
215/50R17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
235/40R18	2.3 (33)	2.1 (30)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (62 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
205/60R16	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	2.6 (38)	3.1 (45)
215/50R17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.6 (38)	2.9 (42)
235/40R18	2.3 (33)	2.1 (30)	2.5 (36)	2.9 (42)

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T125/70R16	4.2 (60)
T125/80R16	4.2 (60)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

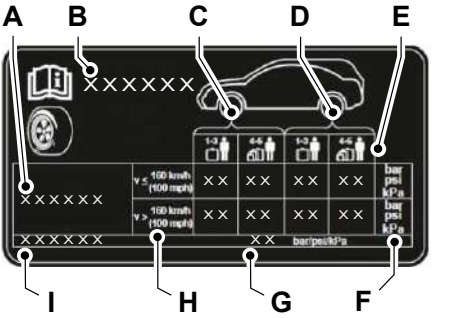
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - ACTIVE

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, icluding the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You probably need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.*



E254054

A	Tire size.
B	Vehicle model.
C	Front tire pressure.
D	Rear tire pressure.
E	Vehicle load.
F	Measure unit.
G	Spare wheel tire pressure.
H	Intended constant vehicle speed.
I	Spare wheel tire size.

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/55R17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
215/50R18	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (62 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/55R17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
215/50R18	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T125/70R16	4.2 (60)
T125/80R16	4.2 (60)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

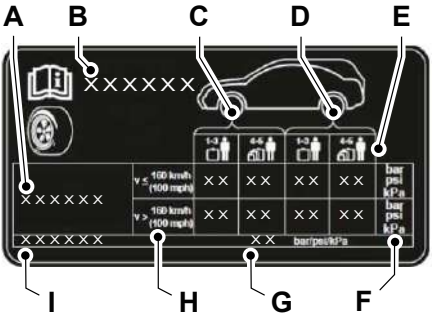
TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - ST

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You probably need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



E254054

A Tire size.
B Vehicle model.
C Front tire pressure.
D Rear tire pressure.
E Vehicle load.
F Measure unit.
G Spare wheel tire pressure.
H Intended constant vehicle speed.
I Spare wheel tire size.

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/50R17	2.3 (33)	2.3 (33)	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)
235/40R18	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)
235/35R19	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.7 (39)	2.7 (39)

Continuous Speed in Excess of 160 km/h (100 mph) or With Trailer Towing up to 100 km/h (62 mph)

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/50R17	2.7 (39)	2.4 (35)	2.9 (42)	3 (44)
235/40R18	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	2.6 (38)
235/35R19	2.7 (39)	2.4 (35)	2.9 (42)	3 (44)

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T125/70R17	4.2 (60)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.

WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION

WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

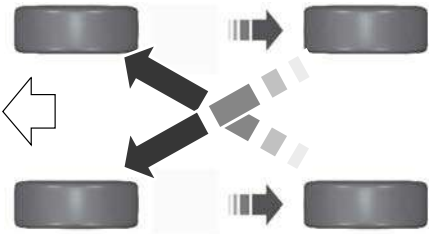
Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

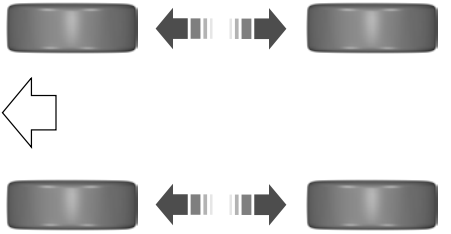
Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

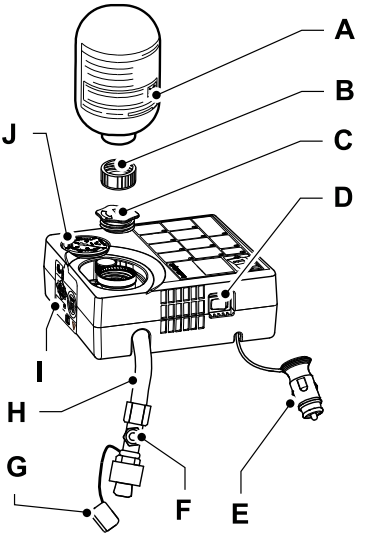
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is in the luggage compartment.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



A	Sealant bottle.
B	Bottle cap.
C	Sealant bottle access cap.
D	Power switch.
E	12 volt DC power point connector.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

F Pressure release valve.
G Protective cap.
H Tire inflation pipe.
I Warning Label.
J Pressure gauge.

Note: *Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.*

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

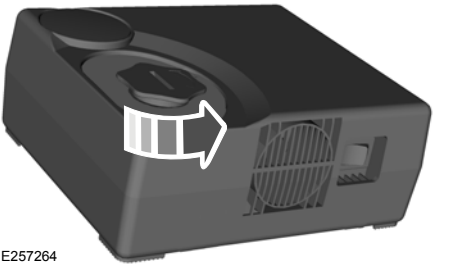
WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: *Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.*

E257263

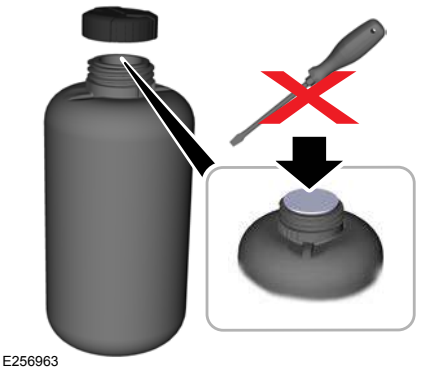
2. To temporarily repair a punctured tire, release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

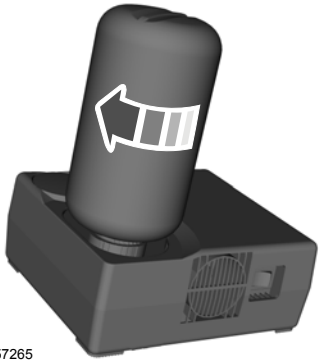
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



E256963

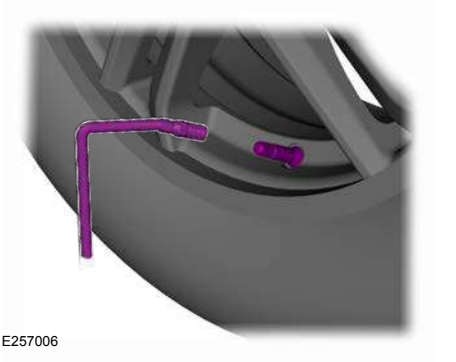
4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.*



E257006

6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.

E257022

7. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Power Outlet** (page 154).
8. Start the engine.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

9. Switch the compressor on.

WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

10. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

Note: *If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

11. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.
12. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: *Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.*

13. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
14. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

E257942

15. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

16. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 383). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 385). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 386).

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26.1 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.*

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WARNING: If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.9 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

Note: *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

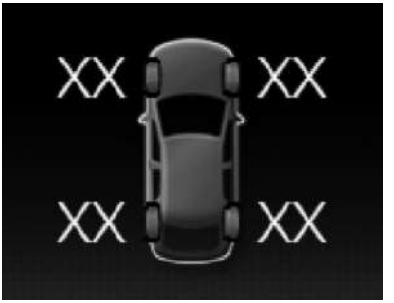
Note: *After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.*

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.

2. Select ***Information***.
3. Select ***Tyre pressure***.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select ***MyView***.
2. Select ***Tyre Pressure***.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select ***Settings***.
2. Select ***Information***.
3. Select ***Tyre pressure***.
4. Select ***Reset***.
5. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select ***Vehicle Maintenance***.
3. Select ***Tyre Monitor***.
4. Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly underinflated	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 386). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 385). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 383). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tyre pressure low	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.

WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as the your vehicle road wheels, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner. We recommend that you have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheels, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

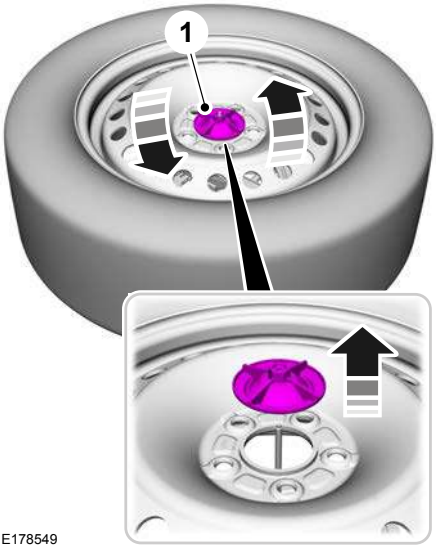
Note: *Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.*

Note: *The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.*

Note: *: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.*

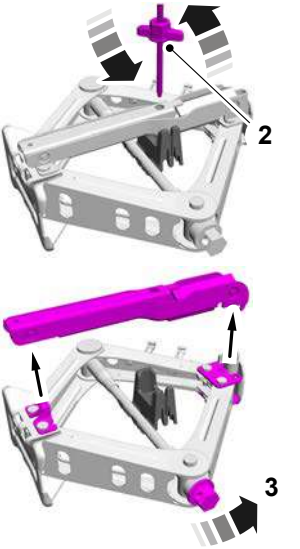
The spare wheel, vehicle jack, towing eye, wheel nut tool and wheel trim remover are in the luggage compartment under the floor covering or in the side panel.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



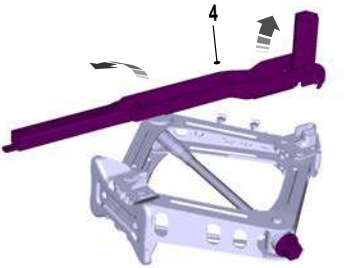
E178549

1. To remove the spare wheel, vehicle jack and wheel nut tool, turn the securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.



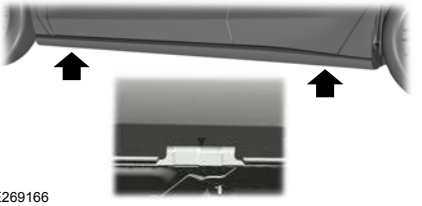
E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw counterclockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and wheel nut tool from the vehicle jack.



E245204

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the wheel nuts.
5. If you have wheel trim, use the hook on the vehicle jack handle and wheel nut tool to remove the wheel trim.



E269166

WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

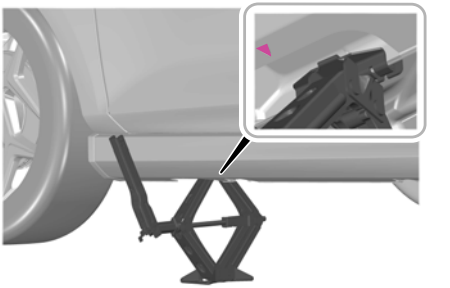
WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

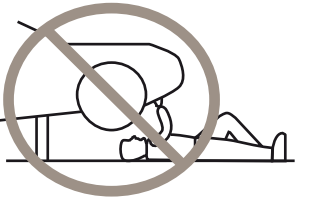
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

6. Locate the vehicle jacking points. Small arrow-shaped marks indicate the locations.

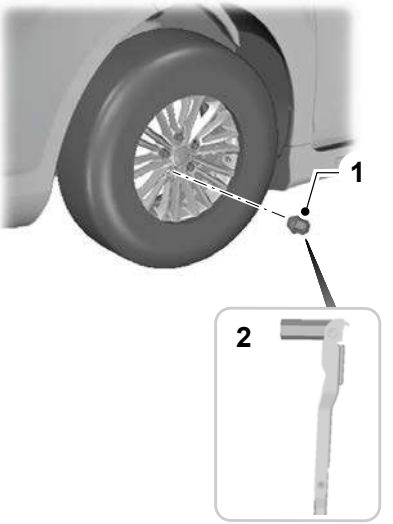


7. Carefully position the vehicle jack onto the vehicle jacking point.



8. Place the hexagonal end of the vehicle jack handle and wheel nut tool onto the vehicle jack.
9. Turn the vehicle jack handle clockwise to raise the vehicle without lifting the wheel off the ground.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing



10. If your vehicle has locking wheel nuts, install the locking wheel nut tool and loosen the locking wheel nut first.
11. Loosen the wheel nuts.
12. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
13. Remove the wheel nuts and the wheel.

Note: *Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground. This may damage the paint.*

WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

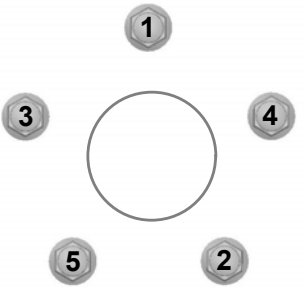
WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

14. Inspect the wheel pilot bore (**A**) and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.
15. Install the wheel.
16. Install the wheel nuts finger tight.

Note: *Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.*



E75442

17. Partially tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown
18. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
19. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 403).
20. Carefully install the wheel trim.

WHEEL NUTS

WARNING: Only use the specific wheel nuts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Nm (lb.ft)
135 (100)

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - 5-DOOR/ACTIVE

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,397 (173.1)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,979 (77.9)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	1,844 (72.6)
Overall height including the roof rails.	1,502–1,505 (59.1–59.3)
Wheelbase.	2,700 (106.3)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - WAGON/ACTIVE

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,693 (184.8)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,979 (77.9)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	1,844 (72.6)
Overall height including the roof rails.	1,536–1,539 (60.5–60.6)
Wheelbase.	2,700 (106.3)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - 5-DOOR, EXCLUDING: ACTIVE/ST

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,380 (172.4)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,979 (77.9)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	1,825 (71.9)
Overall height including the antenna.	1,467–1,475 (57.8–58.1)
Wheelbase.	2,700 (106.3)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - WAGON, EXCLUDING: ACTIVE/ST

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,671 (183.9)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,979 (77.9)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	1,825 (71.9)
Overall height including the antenna.	1,494–1,499 (58.8–59.0)
Wheelbase.	2,700 (106.3)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - 4-DOOR

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,669 (183.8)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,979 (77.9)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	1,825 (71.9)
Overall height including the antenna.	1,468–1,472 (57.8–58.0)
Wheelbase.	2,700 (106.3)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - 5-DOOR/ST

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,392 (172.9)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,979 (77.9)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	1,825 (71.9)
Overall height including the antenna.	1,454–1,455 (57.2–57.3)
Wheelbase.	2,700 (106.3)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - WAGON/ST

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,671 (183.9)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,979 (77.9)
Overall width excluding the exterior mirrors.	1,825 (71.9)
Overall height including the antenna.	1,486–1,488 (58.5–58.6)
Wheelbase.	2,700 (106.3)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	4.5 L (0.99 gal)

Note: *The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1 L (0.22 gal).*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.11 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.2 L (1.36 gal)

Note: *The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1.77 L (0.39 gal).*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C952-A1

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C952-A1, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C5.

Note: *Do not use more than 1 L (0.22 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.3 L (1.17 gal)

Note: *The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to nominal is 0.85 L (0.19 gal).*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you can top up with a SAE 0W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.11 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	10.4 L (2.3 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx	WSS-M99C130-A

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.75 L (1.8 qt) [1]

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV JU7J-M2C200-AA,JU7J-M2C200-CA	WSS-M2C200-E1

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.325 L (1.4 qt) [1]

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid 75W MX KU7J-M2C955-AA	WSS-M2C955-A1

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.25 ± 0.1 L (4.5 ± 0.1 qt) [1]

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid F-DC	WSS-M2C218-A1/A2

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.3L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11 L (11.6 qt) [1]

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: *Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBLUE

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11 L (11.6 qt)

[1] Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: *Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

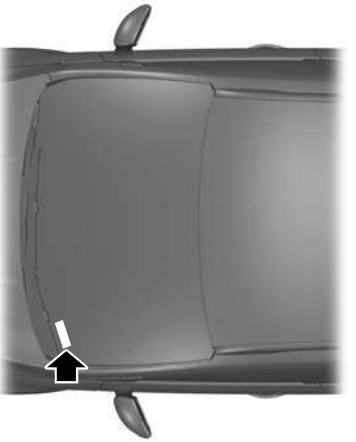
Note: *We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

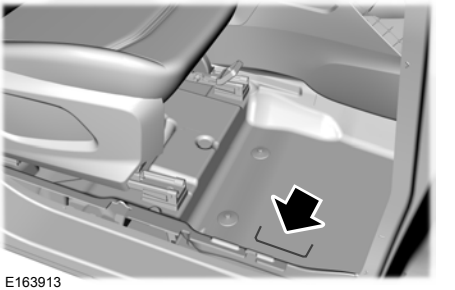
LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E163915

On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E163913

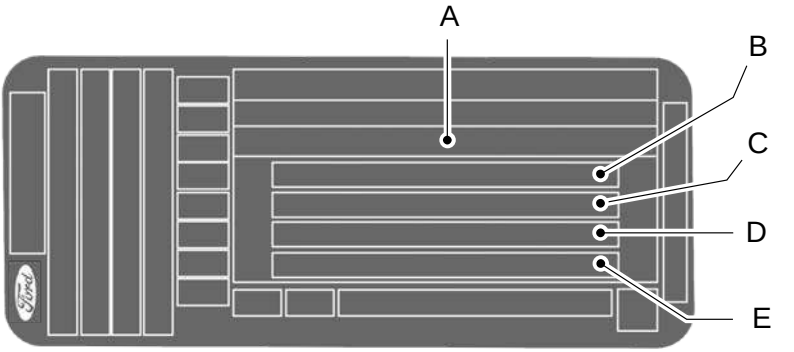
Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

A Vehicle identification number.
B Gross vehicle weight.
C Gross train weight.
D Maximum front axle weight.
E Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM

The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Press ***Connected Vehicle Features***.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Switch ***Wi-Fi*** on.
4. Press ***View Available Networks***.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.*

Note: *Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.*

Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.

Note: *The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.*

3. Press ***Settings***.
4. Press ***Edit***.
5. Press ***Hotspot Visibility***.

Note: *The hotspot visibility default setting is on.*

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Press ***Settings***.

Note: *The network name is the hotspot name.*

4. Press ***Show Password***.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: *The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.*

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: *Secure websites do not redirect.*

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: *If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.*

Note: *If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.*

Note: *If you carry out a vehicle system reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.*

Note: *The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.*

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Press ***Settings***.
4. Press ***Edit***.
5. Press ***Change Network Name***.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press ***Done***.
8. Press ***Change Password***.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press ***Done***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Vehicle Hotspot***.
3. Press ***Settings***.
4. Press ***Edit***.
5. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF

Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select ***Sources***.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.*

Note: *The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.*

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: *A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.*

MUTING THE AUDIO

Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: *The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

1. Press the settings icon on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Sound settings***.
3. Select the desired menu point and adjust the settings.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Clock settings***.
3. Set the time.

Note: *The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.*

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Clock settings***.
3. Switch ***Auto Time Update*** on or off.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press ***Stations*** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF

Press the button on the touchscreen.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations

Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.

Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press ***Stations*** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Audio System

Audio system muted.

Connected Device

Cell phone microphone muted.

Phone call in progress.

Media player connected using ***Bluetooth***®.

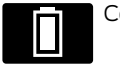
Cell phone network signal strength.

Cell phone roaming.

Text message received.

Unread email message.

Automatic crash notification system off.


Cell phone battery status.

Vehicle Data

Wi-Fi available.

Wi-Fi connected.

Vehicle data sharing on.

Vehicle data sharing off.

Vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Vehicle Software Update

Wireless Accessory Charger

Wireless accessory charger active.

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Ford Assistant***.
3. Switch ***Listen for Wake Word*** on.
4. Press ***Preferred Wake Word***.
5. Press a setting.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word followed by your command.

You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

General Examples

Command	Result
Start Over.	The system resets the current voice interaction.
Cancel.	The system ends the current voice interaction.
Next Page.	The system goes to the next page.
Previous Page.	The system goes to the previous page.
Help.	The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen.

Entertainment Examples

Command	Result
Play The Beatles.	The system plays the selected music.
Show music by The Beatles.	The system shows the selected music.
Tune to FM 101.9.	The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Climate Examples

Command	Result
Set the temperature to low.	The system sets the temperature to the minimum.
Set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).	The system sets the temperature to 22°C (72°F).

Phone Examples

Command	Result
Call Henry.	The system calls Henry using your connected device.
Dial (phone number).	The system dials the selected phone number.
Send a text message to Henry.	The system begins a dictated text message.
Read my message from Henry.	The system reads you the most recent message from Henry.

Apps Examples

Command	Result
Mobile Apps.	The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system.
List Mobile Apps.	The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	The system will search and connect to compatible apps running on your mobile device.

Navigation Examples

Command	Result
Say the address that you're looking for, like 'The Queen's Walk, London'.	The system begins guided navigation to the address.
Where is ___	The system searches for the requested point of interest.
Show me directions to Oakwood Boulevard and Pelham Road.	The system shows directions to the selected intersection.
Cancel route.	The system ends guided navigation to the destination.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT

Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Amazon Alexa***.
3. Press ***Get Started***.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Amazon Alexa***.
3. Press ***Sign Out***.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Amazon Alexa***.
3. Switch ***Listen for Wake Word*** on or off.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Amazon Alexa***.
3. Press ***Contact List***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Amazon Alexa***.
3. Press ***Things to Try***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

PHONE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure ***Bluetooth®*** is enabled on your device.
2. Press ***Add phone*** on the touchscreen.

Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.*

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.*

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: *If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.*

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: *Up to 12 devices can be stored.*

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Hndsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select ***Bluetooth®***.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select ***Bluetooth®***.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure ***Bluetooth®*** is enabled on your device.
2. Press ***Add phone*** on the touchscreen.

Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.*

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: *A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.*

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.*

The ***Bluetooth®*** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by ***Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press ***Sources***.
4. Press ***Bluetooth***.

Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.

Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

APP PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press ***Apps*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Mobile Apps Help***.
3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via ***Bluetooth®*** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press ***Apps*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Mobile Apps Help***.
3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via ***Bluetooth®***.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Access the system applications.
6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **Mobile Apps** are enabled.*

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.*

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to ***Bluetooth®***.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Disable***.

Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Connect to Apple CarPlay***.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to ***Bluetooth®***.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: *Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.*

Disabling Android Auto

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Disable***.

Re-Enabling Android Auto

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Phone List***.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press ***Connect to Android Auto***.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

Your vehicle may have connected navigation as a free trial after purchase. You require a subscription after the trial expires. For additional information, visit *ford.com/connectedservices*.

Note: *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the home screen.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

LIVE TRAFFIC

WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Connectivity***.
3. Press ***Connected Vehicle Features***.
4. Switch **Connected Navigation** on or off.

Note: *Switching off this feature disables all features of the **Connected Navigation**.*

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.

Note: *Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.*

3. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: *Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.*

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

Note: *Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.*

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE

Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 419).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 443).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
  - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
  - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***Software Updates***.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.

Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Note: *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press ***Recurring Schedule***.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press ***Save***.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press ***Update Details***.
2. Press ***Update Now***.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press ***Update Details***.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.

Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.

Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.

Vehicle software update successful.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press ***Settings*** on the touchscreen.
2. Press ***General***.
3. Press ***Reset***.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.

Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/ Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/ Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenima-halle/Ankara	Ankara
TUR OTO	(312) 232 32 72	Celal Bayar Blv. Ali Suavi Sok. No: 5 Maltepe/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A-B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşa-dası/Aydın	Aydın
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Name	Telephone	Address	City
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Ataturk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/ Batman	Batman
MEÇİKOĞULLARI	(248) 317 10 70	Burdur-Antalya Karayolu Üzeri Atilla Mah. No: 290 Bucak/ Burdur	Burdur
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No:380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/ Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/ Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/ Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Menderes Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/ Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/ Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKEN-DERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaoğlanoğlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKİT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır	Iğdır
ERGİN	(324) 327 10 10	Kuzeykent mah Ali Kaya Mutlu Cad No:172/11 Yenişehir/ Mersin	İçel
ATILGAN SANC-AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sanc-aktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
AYDOĞANLAR	(212) 665 84 84	Yenibosna Merkez Mah. Kavak Sokak Ser Plaza No: 3/1-2, Bodrum Kat Bahçelievler/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No:57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No:12 Migros karşısı A.Hisarı/ İstanbul	İstanbul
KAR OTOMOTİV	(212) 612 49 49	Defterdar Mah. Fethi Çelebi Cad. No: 23/1 Eyüp/İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Name	Telephone	Address	City
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL ATAŞEHİR	(216) 574 38 32	Kayışdağı Cd. No: 3 Flora Plaza Küçükbakkalköy, Ataşehir/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karsıyaka/Izmır Karşıyaka/ İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/ İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
KEMAK	(344) 236 55 99	Erkenez Mahallesi Recep Tayyip Erdoğan Bulvarı No: 135/A Kahramanmaraş	K. Maraş
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/ Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya
OTOKOÇ KÜTAHYA	(274) 225 03 50	Eskişehir Yolu 3. Km No: 29/1 Kütahya	Kütahya
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kırlar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No: 102 Merkez/Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/Samsun	Samsun

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
VOLKAN Tekirdağ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çift-likköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
• All passenger cars. • Ranger • Tourneo Connect. • Tourneo Courier. • Transit Connect. • Transit Courier.	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
• Tourneo Custom. • Transit. • Transit Custom.	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit *http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html*.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit *www.wirelessconformity.ford.com*.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of ***REACH***, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

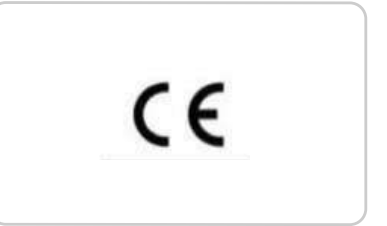
To find out more about the ***REACH*** directive, search ***REACH*** on the local Ford website.

Note: *To find the local Ford website, visit https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html*.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

ANTENNAS

European Union EU



Ukraine

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

United Kingdom

UK CA

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Short Range Radar (SRR)	Continental	SRR3-B

Argentina

RAMATEL
C-17954

Belarus

EAC

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
01741-15-08699

Canada

Short Range Radar Sensor SRR3-B
IC ID: 4135A-SRR3B

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information:
This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and the body of any persons, user or bystander.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 8 in (20 cm) de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 240/MCPT/SG/16
Date d'agrément : 23/05/2016

European Union EU

CE

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה סטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63484
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה סקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - SRR3-B.

Malaysia

MCMC

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0727/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 10/12/2019

Mexico

IFETEL: RLVCOSR15-0904

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:
(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Moldova

024

Pakistan

Approved by PTA
TAC NO: 9.889/2018

PTA
Pakistan Telecom Authority

Paraguay

CONATEL

NR: 2019-12-I-0684

Russia

EAC

Serbia

И011 18

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

South Africa

TA-2015/444
APPROVED

ICASA

South Korea

MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3B

Taiwan

CCAB15LP1650T9

警語
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Ukraine

справжнім flDC. Automoti ve Distance Control Systems GmbH заявляє, що тип радіообладнання SRR3 - В відповідає технічному регламенту радіообладнання ;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою :

http://continental .automotive-approvals.com/

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER62934

DEALER No:
DA40068

United Kingdom

UK
CA

United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION TO USERS

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam

Ford Viet Nam Limited
A084823081 9AF04A2
ICT

Zambia

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2015/7/46

BODY CONTROL MODULE

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES
CNC ID: H-23804

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
08346-19-05297

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: ZRO-M8-7E3-281

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - M3NA2C766336.

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 20148 ANRT 2019
Date d'agrément: 19/06/2019

Paraguay

2019-01-I-000076

Serbia

И011 20

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

South Africa

Ukraine

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No: ER68566/19

DEALER No: DA37380/15

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3NA2C766336

IC: 7812A-A2C766336

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam

Zambia

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/103

CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
MRR3 Medium Range Radar	Aptiv	F3TR

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-24707

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 059/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 01/10/2020

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
15830-21-12270

EAC Marking - Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan

EAC

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Europe Union EU

CE

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X13

Independent State Of Samoa

SMO Samoa

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-82320
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, התלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – F3TR.

Malaysia

MCMC

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0835/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2020

Mexico

IFT: RCPAPF320-0479

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MR00030034ANRT2021

Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

Pakistan

Paraguay

NR: 2020-10-I-0752

Sierra Leone

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TAN: 2021-002-0028

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

R-C-1Ap-F3TR

Taiwan

CCAI20LP1150T2

South Africa

TA-2021/2321

ICASA APPROVED

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

South Korea

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDRA

ER19344/23
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

UK CA

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2CF3TR

IC: 3432A-F3TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia

ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2020/9/69

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

Device	Type Designation
Flip Key	A08TBB
Passive Key	A2C17105200

European Union EU

CE

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-81657
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, כלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Moldova

SM
024

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément: MR8923 ANRT 2014

Date d'agrément: 04/02/2014

Serbia

И005 20

South Africa

TA-2013/1616

ICASA

APPROVED

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Ukraine

United Kingdom

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Intrusion Transceiver Module	Omron/Nidec	OUC26006559

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES
CNC ID: H-20728

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES
CNC ID: H-26283

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
03485-18-03199

Europe

CE

UK CA

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E1-115

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה סטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-63481
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:

SMA - OUC26006559.

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 14721 ANRT 2017
Date d'agrément : 12/09/2017

Paraguay

NR: 2018-04-I-000175

Serbia

И005 21

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

N0650-18

South Africa

TA-2018/1198

ICASA APPROVED

South Korea

MSIP- R-RMM-OAC-OUC26006559

Taiwan

CCAK17LP1580T3

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDRA

ER95949/21
United Arab Emirates

United States of America and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: OUC26006559

IC: 850K-26006559

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia

ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2017/12/14

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24008

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: C-24009

Brazil

ANATEL

08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

ANATEL

08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

European Union EU

CE

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Malaysia

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

Serbia

И005 20

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2019

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Paraguay

CONATEL

South Africa

TA-2019/2465

ICASA

APPROVED

2020-03-I-00192
2020-03-I-00193

TA-2019/2466

TA-2018/639

ICASA

APPROVED

CCAB20LP0300T1

South Korea

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4

MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNCG4L

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

Taiwan

CCAB20LP0290T8

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TDRA

ER74903/19
United Arab Emirates

TDRA

ER74902/19
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

UK CA

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/40

Zambia

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/11/41

TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

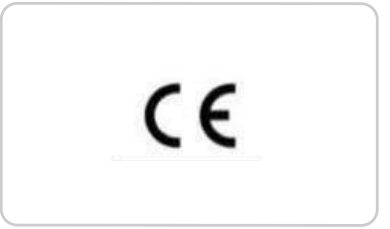
Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FB5-TCU

Argentina

C-28150

Brazil

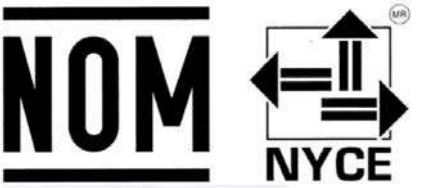
Europe Union EU



Malaysia

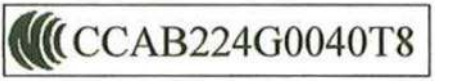
HIDF16000009

Mexico



South Africa

Taiwan



We recommend that the distance between the antenna of the telematics control unit and the user be greater than 35 cm (14 in) when using the telematics control unit.

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

United Kingdom

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A00182015

ICT

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
434 Faraday TPMS Sensor	Schrader/Sensata	AG2SZ4

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-13498

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

18962-22-08001

China

CMIIT ID:2014DJ1923

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

Nº d'homologation: HIR -0051/4/2014

Date d'homologation: 16/4/2014

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 198/MCPT/DDTCC
Date d'agrément : 7/9/2021

European Union (EU)

The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type AG2SZ4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 3R88M14030

Independent State of Samoa

SMO Samoa

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-77913
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - AG2SZ4

Malaysia

MCMC

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0842/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 21/09/2020

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098
ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications
equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

Oman

OMAN TRA

TA-R/1752/14

D090258

Paraguay

NR: 2017-06-I-0000175

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority

PTA

Approved by PTA 2020

Serbia

И005 20

Russia

EAC

Sierra Leone

NATCOM

TAN: 2017-002-0035

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa

ICASA

TA-2014/064

Approved

South Korea

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2SZ4

Taiwan

CCAM14LP0090T3

Thailand

(1)เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทช.

(2)เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E)

TDRA

ER19543/23
United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom

UK CA

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXAG2SZ4

IC: 2546A-AG2SZ4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam

A113612112 0AF04A3

ICT

Zambia

ZICTA

ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2015/7/41

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	Delphi/Aptiv	WACM

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-21576

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-25997

Brazil

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
04021-18-06661

ANATEL
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
15861-21-12270

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

Nº d'homologation: HER - 0055/Octobre/2021

Date d'homologation: 14/10/2021

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 004/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 10/01/2019

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 133/DDTIC/2021
Date d'agrément : 07/09/2021

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

European Union EU

CE

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E1-174

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-110-RDR

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-81682
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - WACM.

This product has been Type Approved By Jamaica: SMA – WACM3

Malaysia

MCMC

CIDF19000037

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0474/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 05/03/2018

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0964/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 7/12/2021

Moldova

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 15474 ANRT 2017
Date d'agrément : 25/12/2017

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00029420 ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 11/07/2021

Paraguay

NR: 2017-10-I-0000333
NR: 2021-08-I-0489

Russia

EAC

Serbia

И011 18

И005 21

Sierra Leone

NATCOM

TAN: 2022-002-0020

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Africa

TA-2017/3167

ICASA

APPROVED

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TA-2021/1367
ICASA
APPROVED

CCAH21LP3850T2

South Korea

R-RMM-DLH-WACM

Ukraine

UA.TR.028

Taiwan

CCAH17LP1930T0

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER57347/17

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER98640/21

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER98639/21

DEALER No:
DA37380/15

United Kingdom

UK
CA

United States and Canada

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0066T

FCC ID: L2C0084T

FCC ID: L2C0074TR

FCC ID: L2C0084TR

IC ID: 3432A-0074TR

IC ID: 3432A-0084TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam

Ford Vietnam
A00182015

ICT

Zambia

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2018/9/26

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2021/9/52

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 49).

1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.

1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 49).

1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 50).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).

2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

2.3. Types of data and its recipients.

2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
- Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.
- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
- Any additional data (if applicable):

2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -

2.4. Arrangements for data processing.

2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.

2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.

(1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

(2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

(3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.

3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.

3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.

3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.

3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.

3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav’s third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav (“Telenav”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessung-swesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	“© EuroGeographics”
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”
Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATITVES AND PERMITED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

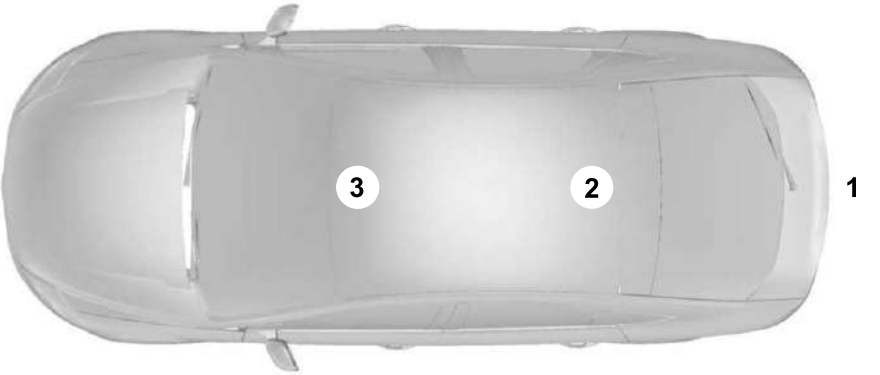
WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

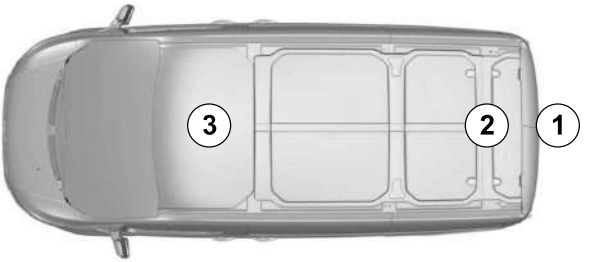
Note: *We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start,* ***Bluetooth®*** *connectivity or satellite navigation.*

Note: *Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle, such as, cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.*

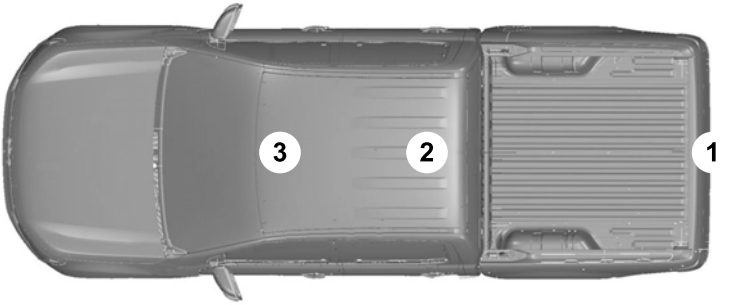
Car



Van



Truck



Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

1

12V Battery.....362
12V Battery Precautions.....362
Battery Management System Limitations.....363
Changing the 12V Battery.....363
How Does the Battery Management System Work.....363
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery.....365
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....364
What Is the Battery Management System.....363
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....365
12V Battery – Information Messages.....365
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....365
180 Degree Camera.....242
180 Degree Camera Precautions.....242

A

A/C
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....126
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....132
About This Publication.....19
ABS
See: Brakes.....217
Accessing Navigation.....440
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....163
Accessing the Trip Computer.....120
Active Park Assist.....244
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....248
Active Park Assist Precautions.....244
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....248
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....248
Active Park Assist – Information Messages.....248
Adaptive Cruise Control.....252
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....263
Lane Centering.....260
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....255
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....255
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....260
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....253
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....252
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....263
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....263
Adaptive Front Lighting.....93
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting Work.....93
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....95
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting.....95
Adaptive Front Lighting – Information Messages.....95
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue.....413
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification.....198
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....104
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....96
Adjusting the Map.....440
Changing the Format of the Map.....440
Zooming the Map In and Out.....440
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....39
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....38
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....425
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....76
Adjusting the Volume.....424
Aid Mode.....277
How Does Aid Mode Work.....277
What Is Aid Mode.....277
Airbag Locations.....44

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Airbag Precautions.....43
Airbags.....42
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....45
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....45
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....45
Airbags – Warning Lamps.....45
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....126
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....132
Alert and Aid Mode.....278
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....278
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....278
Alexa Built-In.....431
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....431
Alexa Built-In Settings.....431
Ambient Lighting.....97
Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....97
Anti-Lock Braking System.....217
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....217
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....72
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....73
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....73
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....72
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....72
What Are the Interior Sensors.....72
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....72
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....73
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....72
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....73
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....73
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....74
What are the Alarm Security Levels.....73
What Is Ask on Exit.....73
Appendices.....526
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....221
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....221
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....221
App Precautions.....438
App Requirements.....438
Apps.....438
Audio System.....424
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....426
FM Radio.....425
Audio System Precautions.....424
Authorized Dealer Directory.....445
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....103
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations.....103
What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....103
Auto Hold.....226
Auto Hold Indicators.....227
Autolamps.....85
Autolamp Settings.....85
What Are Autolamps.....85
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....222
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....222
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....331
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....331
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....331
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....331
Automatic Emergency Braking.....298
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....298
What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....298
Automatic Engine Stop.....163
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....163
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....163
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....163
Automatic High Beam Control.....88
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....89
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....89
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....88
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....89

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work....88
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control....89
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off....89
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....90
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages....90
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission....212
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations....212
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work....212
What Is Automatic Return to Park (P)....212
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/7-Speed Automatic Transmission....210
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission....210
Automatic Transmission....207
Automatic Return to Park (P) - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission....212
Automatic Transmission Positions....207
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting....214
Brake Shift Interlock - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/7-Speed Automatic Transmission....212
Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters....210
Stay in Neutral Mode - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission....211
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™....415
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue....416
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™....415
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters....208
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators - Vehicles Without: Paddle Shifters....208
Automatic Transmission Positions....207
Drive (D)....208
Low (L)....208
Manual (M)....208
Neutral (N)....207
Park (P)....207
Reverse (R)....207
Automatic Transmission Precautions....207
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters....209
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting....214
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages....214
Auto Mode....128
Auto Mode Indicators....128
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....128
Switching Dual Mode On and Off....130
Autorelock....58
How Does Autorelock Work....58
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning....169
Auto-Start-Stop....168
Auto-Start-Stop Settings....168
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting....169
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators....169
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions....168
Auto-Start-Stop Settings....168
Setting the Engine Stop Speed....168
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting....169
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions....170
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages....169
Autounlock....58
Autounlock Requirements....58
Switching Autounlock On and Off....58
What Is Autounlock....58
Autowipers....79
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor....79

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Autowipers Settings.....79
What Are Autowipers.....79

B

Beginning a Voice Interaction.....429
Blind Spot Assist.....279
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....280
Blind Spot Assist – Information Messages.....281
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....279
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....279
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....279
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....281
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....282
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage – Information Messages.....283
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....281
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....281
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....281
Blind Spot Information System.....285
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....288
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....287
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....288
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....285
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....285
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission.....286
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission.....286
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....288
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....289
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....288
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....287
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....287
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....287
Selecting a Trailer.....288
Setting a Trailer Length.....288
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....287
Bluetooth®.....437
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD.....347
See: Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD.....348
Booster Seats.....36
Brake Fluid Specification.....416
Brake Over Accelerator.....217
Brake Precautions.....217
Brakes.....217
Anti-Lock Braking System.....217
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....218
Brake Shift Interlock - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/7-Speed Automatic Transmission.....212
Brake Shift Interlock Precautions.....212
Using Brake Shift Interlock.....213
What Is Brake Shift Interlock.....212
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....218
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....220
Brakes – Information Messages.....219
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....218
Breaking-In.....326

C

Canceling the Set Speed.....251
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....272
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....271
Capacities and Specifications.....404
Catalytic Converter.....202
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....202
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....202

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting....202
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps....202
Center Display Limitations....427
Center Display Overview....427
Center Display Precautions....427
Changing a Flat Tire....399
Changing a Road Wheel....399
Changing the Backup Battery....51
Changing the Remote Control Battery....52
Changing the Set Speed Limit....271
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password....422
Charging a Device....152
Charging a Wireless Device....157
Checking Local Hazard Information Status....270
Checking the Brake Fluid....217
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level....205
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....198
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....198
Checking the Tire Pressures....383
Checking the Wiper Blades....80
Child Restraint Anchor Points....31
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points....31
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points....31
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points....31
Child Restraints....33
Child Restraint Position Information....33
Child Restraints Recommendation....35
Installing Child Restraints....36
Child Safety....30
Child Restraint Anchor Points....31
Child Restraints....33
Child Safety Locks....37
Child Safety Precautions....30
Cigar Lighter....155
Cigar Lighter Precautions....155
Cleaning the Exterior....375
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors....376
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel....375
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps....375
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics....376
Cleaning the Engine Compartment....376
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions....375
Cleaning the Underbody....376
Cleaning Wheels....375
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades....375
Cleaning the Interior....377
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats....378
Cleaning Displays and Screens....377
Cleaning Fabric....377
Cleaning Leather....377
Cleaning Moonroof Tracks....379
Cleaning Plastic....377
Cleaning Seatbelts....378
Cleaning Storage Compartments....378
Cleaning the Instrument Panel....377
Cleaning Vinyl....378
Climate Control....126
Auto Mode....128
Climate Control Hints....130
Closing the Liftgate....63
Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate....68
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle....67
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle....63
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control....68
Clutch Fluid Specification....205
Cold Weather Precautions....326
Configuring the Trip Computer....120
Connected Navigation....440
Connected Vehicle....419
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting....420
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....419
Connected Vehicle Data....24
Connected Vehicle Limitations....419
Connected Vehicle Requirements....419

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Connected Vehicle Settings.....420
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....420
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....420
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....437
Connecting a Trailer.....320
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball.....317
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....419
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....419
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....419
What Is the Modem.....419
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....419
Connecting Your Phone.....433
Coolant.....359
Adding Coolant.....359
Changing the Coolant.....361
Checking the Coolant Level.....359
Coolant – Information Messages.....362
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....362
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....361
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....412
Crash and Breakdown Information.....329
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....331
Fail-Safe Cooling.....334
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....329
Post-Crash Alert System.....330
Recovery Towing.....332
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....422
Cross Traffic Alert.....290
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....292
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....291
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....292
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....291
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....290
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....292
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....292
Cross Traffic Alert – Warning Lamps.....292
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....291
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....292
What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....291
Cruise Control.....250
Cruise Control Indicators.....251
Cup Holders.....158
Cup Holder Precautions.....158
Customer Information.....452
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....452
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Excluding: Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....115
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....115

D

Data Privacy.....22
Declaration of Conformity.....452
Diesel Particulate Filter.....192
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....193
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions.....192
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements.....193
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....193
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....194
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....193
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....426
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....426
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....426
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....426
Directing the Flow of Air.....128
Distance Alert.....297
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert.....298

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

What Is Distance Alert....297
Distance Indication....297
Distance Indication Indicator....297
Switching Distance Indication On and Off....297
What Is Distance Indication....297
Door Lock Indicators....59
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor....57
How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor Work....57
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings....59
Doors and Locks....55
Autorelock....58
Autounlock....58
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor....57
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting....59
Mislock....58
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....57
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle....55
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting....59
Doors and Locks – Information Messages....59
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps....59
Drive Mode Control....265
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting....266
Drive Modes....265
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting....266
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages....266
Drive Modes....265
Eco....265
Normal....265
Slippery....265
Sport....265
Track....266
Trail....266
Driver Alert....303
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....304
Driver Alert Indicators....304
Driver Alert Precautions....303
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....304
Driver Alert – Information Messages....304
Driving Economically....326
Driving Hints....326
Driving Through Shallow Water....326
Drowsiness Monitor
See: Driver Alert....303

E

eCall....49
eCall – Troubleshooting....51
eCall – Troubleshooting....51
eCall – Information Messages....51
eCall User Information....496
Eco Coach....267
Efficient Drive Mode....268
Trip Summary....268
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators....269
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning....222
Electric Parking Brake....221
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....223
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting....223
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages....223
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps....223
Electromagnetic Compatibility....526
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential....215
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential – Troubleshooting....216
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential – Troubleshooting....216
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential – Information Messages....216
Emergency Assistance....46
Emergency Call Indicators....50
Emergency Call Limitations....47
Emergency Call Requirements....46
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: eCall....25
Emergency Call System Data - Vehicles With: Emergency Assistance....25
Emergency Equipment....338
Emergency Towing....336
Enabling Apps on an Android Device....438
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device....438

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Enabling Local Hazard Information....270
Enabling Remote Start....124
End User License Agreement....500
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....109
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel....359
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline....359
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™....411
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBlue....411
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™....412
Engine Oil....357
Adding Engine Oil....358
Checking the Engine Oil Level....357
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview....357
Intelligent Oil Life Monitor....358
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor....358
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist....245
Entering a Parallel Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist....245
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist....246
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist....246
Environment....26
Evasive Steering Assist....298
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations....298
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off....298
What Is Evasive Steering Assist....298
Event Data....23
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist....247
Exiting a Parking Space - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist....247
Exterior Bulbs....366
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb....370
Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp Bulb....371
Changing a Stoplamp Bulb....371
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart....366
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly....368
Exterior Lamps....86
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning....87
How Do Cornering Lamps Work....86
Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off....86
Using the Front Fog Lamps....87
Using the Rear Fog Lamps....87
Using the Turn Signal Lamps....86
Exterior Lighting Control....83
Exterior Lighting....83
Adaptive Front Lighting....93
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting....95
Autolamps....85
Automatic High Beam Control....88
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....90
Exterior Lamps....86
Glare Free High Beam Control....90
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....93
Headlamps....83
Headlamps – Troubleshooting....85
Exterior Mirrors....104

F

Fail-Safe Cooling....334
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated....334
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators....335
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work....334
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling....334
Fan
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel....359
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline....359
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts....38
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank....196
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank in Cold Weather....196
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump....196

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Portable Container....197
Flat Tire
See: Changing a Flat Tire....399
Floor Mats....327
FM Radio....425
FM Radio Limitations....425
Selecting an FM Radio Station....425
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors....104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors....104
Forward Collision Warning....297
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning....297
What is Forward Collision Warning....297
Front Parking Aid....234
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings....235
Front Parking Aid Limitations....235
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors....235
What is the Front Parking Aid....234
Front Seat Precautions....136
Front Seats....136
Heated Seats....144
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 2-Way Manual Seat....137
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat....138
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 6-Way Manual Seat....140
Power Seats - Vehicles With: Driver 6-Way Power Seat....142
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings....191
Fuel and Refueling....180
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting....191
Fuel Quality....181
Refueling....183
Running Out of Fuel....182
Fuel and Refueling Precautions....180
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting....191
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages....191
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps....191
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™....188
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBlue....189
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.3L EcoBoost™....190
Fuel Consumption Regulations....188
Fuel Economy Display....116
Fuel Gauge....108
Fuel Gauge Limitations....108
Locating the Fuel Filler Door....109
What Is Distance to Empty....109
What Is the Fuel Gauge....108
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder....109
Fuel Quality....181
Selecting the Correct Fuel....181
Switching Between E85 and Gasoline....182
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.0L EcoBoost™....185
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBlue....186
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.3L EcoBoost™....187
Fuse Precautions....339
Fuses....339
Fuses – Troubleshooting....346
Interior Fuse Box....343
Under Hood Fuse Box....339
Fuses – Troubleshooting....346
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions....346

G

Gasoline Particulate Filter....203
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting....203
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions....203
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements....203
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting....203
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages....204
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps....203

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Glare Free High Beam Control.....90
Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators.....92
Glare Free High Beam Control Limitations.....92
Glare Free High Beam Control Precautions.....91
Glare Free High Beam Control Requirements.....91
How Does Glare Free High Beam Control Work.....90
Overriding Glare Free High Beam Control.....92
Switching Glare Free High Beam Control On and Off.....92
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....93
Glare Free High Beam Control – Information Messages.....93
Global Opening and Closing.....100
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....101
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....101
Using Global Closing.....101
Using Global Opening.....101
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....100

H

Headlamps.....83
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....84
Headlamp Indicators.....84
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....83
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....83
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....85
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....85
Head Up Display.....122
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....123
Head Up Display Indicators.....123
Head Up Display Settings.....122
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....123
Head Up Display – Information Messages.....123
Heated Seats.....144
Heated Seat Precautions.....144
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....145
Heating
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....126
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....132
Hill Start Assist.....225
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....225
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....225
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....225
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....225
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD.....347
See: Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD.....348
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....252
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....252
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work.....167
How Does Auto Hold Work.....226
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....285
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....290
How Does Driver Alert Work.....303
How Does eCall Work.....49
How Does Eco Coach Work.....267
How Does Efficient Drive Mode Work.....268
How Does Emergency Assistance Work.....46
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....225
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work.....267
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work.....295
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....294

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work....301
How Does Stability Control Work....230
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work....242
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work....192
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work....203
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work....273
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work....276
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work....149
How Does the Speed Limiter Work....271
How Does Traction Control Work....228
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work....305
How Does Trip Summary Work....267
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work....308
How Do the Front Airbags Work....42
How Do the Side Airbags Work....42
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work....43
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics....167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators....167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information....167

I

Identifying Fuse Types....346
Inflating the Tires....383
Information On Demand Screen....428
Inspecting the Tire for Damage....388
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net....313
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover - 5-Door....314
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover - Wagon....314
Instrument Cluster Display....114
  Personalized Settings....115
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu....114
Instrument Cluster Indicators....111
Instrument Cluster....107
  Fuel Gauge....108
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....108
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....107
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps....109
Instrument Panel - LHD....28
Instrument Panel - RHD....29
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings....275
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators....275
Intelligent Speed Limiter....273
  Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....275
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions....273
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....275
  Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions....275
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit....272
Interior Fuse Box....343
  Accessing the Interior Fuse Box....344
  Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box....344
  Locating the Interior Fuse Box....343
Interior Lamp Function....96
  Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off....96
  What Is the Interior Lamp Function....96
Interior Lighting....96
  Ambient Lighting....97
  Interior Lamp Function....96
Interior Mirror....103
  Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....103
Interior Mirror Precautions....103
Introduction....19

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....329
  Jump Starting Precautions....329

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....329
Preparing the Vehicle.....329

K

Keyless Entry.....60
Keyless Entry Settings.....60
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....61
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Using Keyless Entry.....60
Locking and Unlocking the Liftgate Using Keyless Entry.....61
Keyless Entry Limitations.....60
Keyless Entry Settings.....60
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....60
Switching Keyless Entry On and Off.....60
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....61
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....61
Keys and Remote Controls.....52
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....54
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....54
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....54

L

Lane Centering.....260
How Does Lane Centering Work.....260
Lane Centering Alerts.....262
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....262
Lane Centering Indicators.....262
Lane Centering Limitations.....261
Lane Centering Precautions.....261
Lane Centering Requirements.....261
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....261
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....279
Lane Keeping System Indicators - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....278
Lane Keeping System.....276
Aid Mode.....277
Alert and Aid Mode.....278
Blind Spot Assist.....279
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....281
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....284
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....276
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....276
Lane Keeping System Settings.....277
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....284
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....284
Launch Control Indicators.....374
Launch Control.....374
Launch Control Limitations.....374
Launch Control Precautions.....374
Liftgate.....63
Closing the Liftgate.....63
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....64
Opening the Liftgate.....63
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....69
Liftgate Precautions.....63
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....64
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....71
Liftgate – Information Messages.....64
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....64
Live Traffic.....440
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....440
What Is Live Traffic.....440
Load Carrying.....310
Roof Rack.....310
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....312
Load Carrying Precautions.....310
Loading Your Trailer - 5-Door/ Wagon.....321
Local Hazard Information Indicators.....270
Local Hazard Information.....270
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....270
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....286
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....291
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....182
Locating the Power Outlets.....154

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control....296
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control....296
Locating the Rear View Camera....239
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....390
Locating the USB Ports....152
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger....156
Locating Your Vehicle....52
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Using Keyless Entry....60
Double Locking the Doors....61
Locking the Doors....61
Unlocking the Doors....60
Locking and Unlocking the Liftgate Using Keyless Entry....61
Locking the Liftgate....61
Unlocking the Liftgate....61
Locking the Rear Window Controls....102
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition....76
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....77
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points....316
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points....316
Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions....316
Luggage Compartment Hook - Wagon....315
Luggage Compartment....313
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points....316
Luggage Compartment Precautions....313

M

Maintenance....347
12V Battery....362
12V Battery – Troubleshooting....365
Coolant....359
Engine Oil....357
Exterior Bulbs....366
Maintenance Precautions....347
Making and Receiving a Phone Call....435
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror....103
Manually Making an Emergency Call....49
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....222
Manually Shifting Gears - Vehicles With: Paddle Shifters....210
Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters....210
Manual Seats....146
Adjusting the Head Restraint....146
Folding the Seat Backrest....146
Removing the Head Restraint....146
Unfolding the Seat Backrest....148
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 2-Way Manual Seat....137
Adjusting the Head Restraint....137
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....138
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....137
Removing the Head Restraint....137
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 4-Way Manual Seat....138
Adjusting the Head Restraint....138
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....140
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....139
Adjusting the Seat Height....140
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....139
Removing the Head Restraint....139
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 6-Way Manual Seat....140
Adjusting the Head Restraint....140
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....142
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....142
Adjusting the Seat Cushion....141
Adjusting the Seat Height....142
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....141
Removing the Head Restraint....141
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1.0L EcoBoost™....414
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 2.3L EcoBoost™....414

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Manual Transmission.....205
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....206
Manual Transmission Precautions.....205
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....205
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....206
Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions.....206
Mislock.....58
Mislock Limitations.....58
Switching Mislock On and Off.....58
What Is Mislock.....58
Mobile Communications Equipment.....496
Mobile Device Data.....24
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....106
Overriding Moonroof Bounce-Back.....106
What Is Moonroof Bounce-Back.....106
Moonroof.....105
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....106
Muting the Audio.....424

N

Navigation Map Updates.....440
Navigation.....440
Adjusting the Map.....440
Live Traffic.....440
Route Guidance.....441
Setting a Destination.....440
Waypoints.....441

O

Opening and Closing the Hood - LHD.....347
Opening and Closing the Hood - RHD.....348
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....105
Opening and Closing the Sunshade.....105
Opening and Closing the Windows.....100
Opening the Liftgate.....63
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....66
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....65
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....63
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....63
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....57
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....57
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....55
Double Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....56
Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....55
Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....56
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....55
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....55
OTA
See: Software Update Settings.....442
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....442
Overriding the Set Speed.....260
Over the air
See: Software Update Settings.....442
Over-the-air
See: Software Update Settings.....442
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....442
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....442

P

Parking Aid Indicators.....237
Parking Aid Precautions.....233
Parking Aids.....233
Front Parking Aid.....234
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....237
Rear Parking Aid.....234
Side Parking Aid.....235
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....237
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....237
Passenger Airbag Indicators.....44

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Passive Anti-Theft System.....72
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....72
Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....72
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....72
Performing a System Reset.....444
Personalized Settings.....115
Changing the Instrument Cluster Display Language.....115
Changing the Measurement Unit.....115
Changing the Temperature Unit.....116
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....116
Switching the Instrument Cluster Display Audible Warnings On and Off.....116
Phone Menu.....433
Phone.....433
Phone Precautions.....433
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....437
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....152
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source.....424
Post-Collision Braking.....331
Post-Crash Alert System.....330
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....331
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....331
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....331
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....330
Power Outlet.....154
Power Outlet Precautions.....154
Power Seats - Vehicles With: Driver 6-Way Power Seat.....142
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....142
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....144
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....143
Adjusting the Seat Height.....144
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....143
Removing the Head Restraint.....143
Power-Up
See: Software Update Settings.....442
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....442
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....295
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....295
Pre-Collision Assist.....294
Automatic Emergency Braking.....298
Distance Alert.....297
Distance Indication.....297
Evasive Steering Assist.....298
Forward Collision Warning.....297
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....299
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....299
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....299
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....299
Protecting the Environment.....26
Puncture
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....399
Push Button Ignition Switch.....159

R

Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....452
Antennas.....452
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....453
Body Control Module.....459
Cruise Control Module.....462
Keys and Remote Controls.....467
Passive Anti-Theft System.....468
SYNC.....473
Telematics Control Unit.....479
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors.....482
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....488
REACH.....452
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....151
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....150
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....149
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....149
Rear Occupant Alert System.....149
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....150

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Rear Parking Aid....234
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors....234
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings....234
Rear Parking Aid Limitations....234
What is the Rear Parking Aid....234
Rear Seat Precautions....146
Rear Seats....146
Manual Seats....146
Rear View Camera Guide Lines....239
Rear View Camera Limitations....239
Rear View Camera Precautions....239
Rear View Camera....239
Rear View Camera Settings....240
Rear View Camera Settings....240
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off....241
Switching Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicator On and Off....241
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out....240
Rebooting the Center Display....428
Recovery Towing....332
Accessing the Front Towing Point....332
Accessing the Rear Towing Point....332
Installing the Towing Eye....333
Locating the Towing Eye....332
Refueling....183
Refueling System Overview....183
Refueling Your Vehicle....184
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge....222
Remote Control Limitations....52
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle....124
Remote Start Limitations....124
Remote Start....124
Remote Start Settings....124
Removing the Key Blade....52
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....379
Replacement Parts Recommendation....495
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....54
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades....80
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades....81
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....57
Resetting Driver Alert....303
Resetting the Individual Trip Values....120
Resetting the Trip Computer....120
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....396
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen....396
Restarting the Engine....169
Resuming the Set Speed Limit....272
Resuming the Set Speed....251
Reverse Wipe....80
Reverse Wipe Settings....80
What Is Reverse Wipe....80
Roof Rack....310
Removing and Installing Roof Rack Crossbars....312
Roof Rack Load Capacities....312
Roof Rack Precautions....310
Route Guidance....441
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume....441
Canceling Route Guidance....441
Repeating an Instruction....441
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....326
Running Out of Fuel....182
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....182
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....182

S

Scrolling Through Menu Items....425
Seatbelt Precautions....38
Seatbelt Reminder....39
Checking Seatbelt Status....40
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings....40
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators....39
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off....40

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Seatbelts.....38
Seatbelt Reminder.....39
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....41
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....41
Seatbelts – Information Messages.....41
Security.....72
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....72
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....73
Passive Anti-Theft System.....72
Security – Troubleshooting.....74
Security – Troubleshooting.....74
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....75
Security – Information Messages.....74
Selecting a Drive Mode - Excluding: ST.....265
Selecting a Drive Mode - ST.....265
Selecting a Menu Item.....425
Selecting the Audio Source.....424
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption.....198
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines.....195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions.....195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements.....195
Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....195
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....196
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Frequently Asked Questions.....201
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages.....199
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps.....199
Service Data.....23
Service Intervals.....451
Setting a Destination.....440
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....441
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....441
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....441
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....441
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....441
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....440
Setting a Memory Preset.....424
Settings Data.....24
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....257
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....258
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....256
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....256
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....127
Setting the Clock and Date.....425
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....250
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....67
Setting the Speed Limit.....271
Setting the Temperature.....128
Setting the Wake Word.....429
Shifting Into Reverse.....205
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....209
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....208
Side Parking Aid.....235
Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors.....236
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....236
Side Parking Aid Limitations.....235
What is the Side Parking Aid.....235
Signing In to Your Account.....431
Sitting in the Correct Position.....136
Software Update Indicators.....443
Software Update Settings.....442

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Software Update
See: Software Update Settings.....442
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....442
Special Notices.....20
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control.....250
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....272
Speed Limiter Indicators.....272
Speed Limiter Precautions.....271
Speed Limiter.....271
Speedometer.....108
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators.....301
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations.....301
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions.....301
Speed Sign Recognition Settings.....302
Speed Sign Recognition.....301
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....302
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....302
Speed Sign Recognition – Information Messages.....302
Stability Control Indicator.....231
Stability Control.....230
Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....231
Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....231
Stability Control – Information Messages.....232
Stability Control – Warning Lamps.....231
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions.....159
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....159
Automatic Engine Stop.....163
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....163
Starting the Engine.....160
Stopping the Engine.....161
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....163
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions.....165
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages.....164
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps.....163
Starting the Engine.....160
Restarting the Engine After Stopping It.....161
Starting a Diesel Engine.....160
Starting a Flooded Engine.....161
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....160
Status Bar.....427
Stay in Neutral Mode - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....211
Entering Stay in Neutral Mode.....211
Exiting Stay in Neutral Mode.....212
Stay in Neutral Mode Precautions.....211
What Is Stay in Neutral Mode.....211
Steering Wheel - Excluding: ST.....27
Steering Wheel.....76
Steering Wheel - ST.....27
Stopping the Engine.....168
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....162
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....161
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....69
Storage.....158
Cup Holders.....158
Under Floor Storage.....158
Storing a First Aid Kit.....338
Storing a Warning Triangle.....338
Sunroof
See: Moonroof.....105
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist.....244
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist.....244
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....255
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....126
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....96
Switching Android Auto On and Off.....439
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....438
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....226
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....168

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....286
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....126
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....291
Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....250
Switching Defrost On and Off.....126
Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....303
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off.....268
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....260
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....275
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission.....225
Switching Launch Control On and Off.....374
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....127
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield.....127
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Windshield.....126
Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....233
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....126
Switching Stability Control On and Off - Excluding: ST.....230
Switching Stability Control On and Off - ST.....231
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....436
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off.....242
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....424
Switching the Display On and Off.....426
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....98
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....329
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off.....122
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....128
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....127
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....77
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield.....127
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....274
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....273
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....277
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....277
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....45
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off.....67
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....96
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....80
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....271
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....271
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....228
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....308
System Update
See: Software Update Settings.....442
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....442

T

Tachometer.....108
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....404
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....452
Tire Care.....383

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....395
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....395
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....395
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....397
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....397
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....398
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....397
Tire Pressure Specifications - Active.....385
Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: Active/ST.....383
Tire Pressure Specifications - ST.....386
Tire Rotation.....388
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....390
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....390
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....390
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball.....317
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....319
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....319
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....317
Tow Ball Components.....318
Tow Ball Precautions.....317
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....312
Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities.....312
Towing a Trailer Limitations - 5-Door/ Wagon.....321
Towing a Trailer Precautions - 4-Door.....321
Towing a Trailer Precautions - 5-Door/ Wagon.....321
Towing a Trailer.....321
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....322
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....322
Tow Bar Dimensions.....324
Towing Weight Capacities.....322
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....336
Towing Your Vehicle.....336
Track Use Precautions.....373
Track Use.....373
Traction Control Indicator.....228
Traction Control.....228
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....228
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....228
Traction Control – Information Messages.....229
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....228
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....306
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations.....305
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions.....305
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....306
Traffic Sign Recognition.....305
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....307
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....307
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information Messages.....307
Trailer Towing Hints - 5-Door/ Wagon.....322
Transporting the Vehicle.....333
Trip Computer.....120
Trip Data.....120
Trip Summary.....116
How Does Trip Summary Work.....268
Viewing the Trip Summary.....268
Tyre Pressure Specifications
See: Tire Pressure Specifications - Active.....385
See: Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: Active/ST.....383
See: Tire Pressure Specifications - ST.....386

U

Under Floor Storage.....158
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Floor.....158
Locating the Luggage Compartment Under Floor Storage.....158
Under Hood Fuse Box.....339
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....339
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....340

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....339
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, LHD.....350
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™, RHD.....351
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, LHD.....353
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBlue, RHD.....354
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™, LHD.....355
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™, RHD.....356
USB Ports.....152
Using Alexa Built-In.....431
Using Auto Hold - 6-Speed Automatic Transmission/6-Speed Manual Transmission.....226
Using Auto Hold - 7-Speed Automatic Transmission/8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....227
Using Launch Control.....374
Using Snow Chains - Active.....380
Using Snow Chains - Excluding: Active/ST.....380
Using Snow Chains - ST.....381
Using Snow Traction Devices - ST.....381
Using Summer Tires.....380
Using the Cigar Lighter.....155
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....114
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....391
Using This Publication.....19
Using Winter Tires.....380

V

Vehicle Care.....375
Cleaning the Exterior.....375
Cleaning the Interior.....377
Vehicle Dimensions - 4-Door.....408
Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door, Excluding: Active/ST.....406
Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door/Active.....404
Vehicle Dimensions - 5-Door/ST.....409
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon, Excluding: Active/ST.....407
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon/Active.....405
Vehicle Dimensions - Wagon/ST.....410
Vehicle Identification Number.....417
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....417
Vehicle Identification Plate.....417
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....417
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....417
Vehicle Identification.....417
Vehicle Identification Number.....417
Vehicle Identification Plate.....417
Vehicle Software Updates.....442
Vehicle System Reset.....444
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....423
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....423
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....422
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....423
Ventilation
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....126
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....132
Venting the Moonroof.....106
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level.....267
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....396
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....395
Viewing the Trip Summary.....267
Visual Search.....27
Voice Interaction Examples.....429
Voice Interaction.....429

W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....19

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Washer Fluid Specification.....413
Washers.....81
Adding Washer Fluid.....82
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....81
Using the Rear Window Washer.....82
Using the Windshield Washer.....81
Washer Precautions.....81
Washers
See: Wipers and Washers.....78
Waxing Your Vehicle.....379
Waypoints.....441
Adding a Waypoint.....441
Editing Waypoints.....441
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....111
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....109
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....419
What Is Active Park Assist.....244
What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....167
What is Alexa Built-In.....431
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....168
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....285
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....290
What Is Cruise Control.....250
What Is Drive Mode Control.....265
What Is Driver Alert.....303
What Is eCall.....49
What Is Eco Coach.....267
What Is Efficient Drive Mode.....268
What Is Emergency Assistance.....46
What Is Hill Start Assist.....225
What Is Launch Control.....374
What Is Local Hazard Information.....270
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....294
What Is Remote Start.....124
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....301
What Is Stability Control.....230
What Is the 180 Degree Camera.....242
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....202
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter.....192
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....221
What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential.....215
What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter.....203
What Is the Head Up Display.....122
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....273
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....276
What Is the Power Outlet.....154
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....149
What Is the Rear View Camera.....239
What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....195
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....395
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....390
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....156
What Is Traction Control.....228
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....305
What is Voice Interaction.....429
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....308
Wheel and Tire Information.....380
Wheel Nuts.....403
Wi Fi
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....422
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....419
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....422
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....422
Window Bounce-Back.....101
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....101
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....102
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....101
Windows.....100
Global Opening and Closing.....100
Window Bounce-Back.....101
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....82
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....82
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....82
Wipers and Washers.....78
Autowipers.....79
Reverse Wipe.....80
Washers.....81

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Wipers.....78
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....82
Wipers.....78
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....78
Wiper Precautions.....78
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....156
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....157
Wireless Accessory Charger – Information Messages.....157
Wireless Accessory Charger.....156
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....157
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....308
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....308
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....309
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages.....309
Wrong Way Alert.....308
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....309

Y

Your Authorized Dealer.....445

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

Focus (CGE) Vehicles Built From: 11-03-2024, CG3929en enGBR, Edition date: 202309, First-Printing

CG3929en, Edition date: 202309